GINN AND COMPANY

Ex Libris

THE FLAVIAN AMPHITHEATRE.

A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN

BY

HIRAM TUELL, A.M.
FORMERLY PRINCIPAL OF MILTON (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL

AND

HAROLD NORTH FOWLER, Ph.D.
PROFESSOR IN WESTERN RESERVE UNIVERSITY
FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE PHILLIPS EXETER
ACADEMY

AUTHORS OF "A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN"

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολύ

PREFACE.

—◦◦—

THIS book is not intended to supersede the *First Book in Latin,* published a few years ago. That book has proved to be well adapted to the needs of those for whom it was written, those who, having but a limited time in which to fit for college, wish to pass directly from the First Book to Caesar or Nepos.

This book is intended for those who expect to read fables, stories, the *Viri Romae,* and various selections before beginning to read Caesar or Nepos. It therefore differs radically from the *First Book in Latin* in some respects, while retaining many of its characteristics.

The vocabulary contains little more than six hundred words, exclusive of proper names. The words are chosen from those found most frequently in passages selected from the fables, stories, and other material in common use as preparatory Latin. Their number is limited, in the belief that a small vocabulary of common words thoroughly learned is far better than a half-learned large vocabulary of words which the learner may meet only occasionally in his later reading.

To insure the acquisition of the vocabulary, every

word when first introduced is used in at least three con-
secutive chapters, and the small number of words leads
to their more frequent repetition in later chapters.

The illustrative sentences — which in all cases precede
the rules of syntax — contain, with few exceptions, only
words already found in the exercises.

Each principle of syntax appears in .at least three
successive chapters when first introduced, and is after-
ward frequently repeated.

The development of the verb is slow, and carefully
graded with reference to the difficulty of acquirement.

All long vowels are marked.

The exercises which have no special vocabularies are
designed to be easy drill exercises, and contain no new
words. They are numerous, and are capable of indefinite
expansion at the will of the teacher.

The carefully graded reading lessons, beginning with
Chapter III. and numbering thirty-three in all, consist
of tales and fables, followed, after Chapter XL., by
extracts from the early legendary history of Rome.
Comparatively few words are used which have not
already occurred in the exercises; and whenever new
words are introduced, their translation is given in
parenthesis.

The illustrations and exercises of Chapter LXI. (on
indirect discourse) can be omitted without causing incon-
venience in the use of the rest of the book.

The derivation and composition of words are treated

somewhat more fully than is usual in books for beginners, in the hope that a simple presentation of important parts of these subjects may lighten the pupil's subsequent labors.

The selections for reading at the end of the book consist of fables and historical stories, including passages adapted from Eutropius, giving a brief biography of Julius Caesar.

In these lessons the words which have not been used in the exercises are printed in heavy-faced type the first time they are found in any selection, and are given in the special vocabularies at the end of the selections, thus making them more easily accessible for those who wish to use these selections for rapid reading, and perhaps no less useful for others.

This book contains more easy Latin reading than the *First Book in Latin,* both in the body of the book and at the end. Much has been retained from the former book, but many changes have been made, chiefly with the aim of making the work easier and more interesting to young learners. Certain changes in arrangement have been made which do not at first sight appear to make the book either more interesting or easier, but which we hope may prove to accomplish both results. Such are, for instance, the introduction of certain uses of the subjunctive before the indicative of all conjugations has been entirely learned, and the introduction of the participles somewhat earlier than in the *First Book in Latin.*

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, editor-in-chief of the Students' Series, whose criticisms and suggestions have been of the greatest value to us.

<div align="right">HIRAM TUELL.

HAROLD N. FOWLER.</div>

JUNE, 1900.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

A Beginner's Book in Latin.

———◦◦❧◦◦———

CHAPTER I.

Introduction.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V,[1] X, Y, Z. It is the same as the English, with the omission of J and W. The letter I does duty for both I and J.

2. VOWELS.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y.* They are either *long* (‾), *short* (˘), or *common* (≍); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

All the long vowels will be marked in this book. Unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short.

3. CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be classified as follows: —

Mutes :
{ *p, b,* are *p* mutes.
{ *t, d,* are *t* mutes.
{ *k, c, g, q,* are *k* mutes.

---

[1] In pronunciation the Romans made *u* and *v* very much alike, and in many books *u* is printed for *v* and V for U. In fact, V is merely a consonant U. In this book, however, *u* and *v* are both used.

Liquids: *l, m, n, r.*
Spirants: *f, i* consonant, *s, v ; s* is also a sibilant.
Double consonants: *x = cs* or *gs, z = ds.*
H is only the sign of a rough breathing.

Pronunciation.

NOTE. — Latin is now pronounced differently in different countries. English-speaking people use either the *Roman* or the *English* method.

4.   ROMAN METHOD.

1. *Vowels.*

ā has the sound of *a* in *father.*
ē has the sound of *e* in *fête* (like *a* in *fate*).
ī has the sound of *i* in *machine.*
ō has the sound of *o* in *holy.*
ū has the sound of *oo* in *boot.*

y is rare. It was pronounced like *u* in French, or *ü* in German; that is, half-way between the sounds of *ī* and *ū*, as given above.

The short vowels have the same sound as the corresponding long ones, but require less time for utterance.

So ă is like *a* in *staff* (pronounced broadly).
ĕ is like *e* in *met.*
ĭ is like *i* in *pick.*
ŏ is like *o* in *wholly.*
ŭ is like *oo* in *book.*

2. *Diphthongs.*

ae has the sound of *ai* in *aisle.*
au has the sound of *ow* in *how.*
ei (rare) has the sound of *ei* in *eight.*
eu (rare) has the sound of *eu* in *feud.*
oe has the sound of *oi* in *boil.*

For *ui*, sometimes called a diphthong, see **4, 6.**

3. *Consonants.*

Consonants have generally the same sounds as in English, but

c has always the sound of *c* in *can.*
g has always the sound of *g* in *game.*
i consonant has always the sound of *y* in *yet.*
s has always the sound of *s* in *son* or *yes.*[1]
t has always the sound of *t* in *tone.*[2]
v has always the sound of *w* in *we.*
ch has always the sound of *k.*
th has always the sound of *th* in *thin.*

4. *Syllables.*

In a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs : a-gri-co-la, *farmer.* A single consonant between two vowels belongs in the syllable with the following vowel : a-mā-bam, *I was loving.*

Two or more consonants between two vowels belong with the following vowel, if they can be pronounced with it :[3] cō-gnō-scō, *I recognize;* in-du-stri-a, *diligence;* ne-gle-gen-ti-a, *carelessness;* for-tis, *brave;* al-tis-si-mus, *highest;* pu-el-la, *girl;* dī-xit, *he said.*

Compound words are divided into their component parts, sub-it, *under he goes.*

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima,* the syllable before the last the *penult,* and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult.*[4]

---

[1] Never soft nor like *sh.*   [2] Never like *t* in *nation.*

[3] In other words, any combination of consonants that begins a Latin word can begin a syllable.

[4] *Ultima* is the Latin word for *last; penult* is shortened from *paene ultima, almost the last;* and *antepenult* means *before the penult.*

5. *Quantity of Vowels.*

NOTE. — In many instances the quantity of vowels can be learned only by observation, but the following rules will prove useful.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: vĭ-a, *road;* nĭ-hil, *nothing.*

A vowel before *nd* or *nt* is short.

Diphthongs, and vowels produced by contraction are long: nau-ta, *sailor;* cō-gŏ (for cŏăgŏ), *I collect.*

A vowel before *nf, ns, gm, gn,* and consonant *i,* is long: cōnfer, *compare;* amāns, *loving;* āgmen, *line of march;* cō-gnōscō, *recognize;* cūius, *of whom.*

6. *Quantity of Syllables.*

A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: mā-ter, *mother;* Cae-sar, *Cæsar.*

A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants[1] or *x* or *z:* men-tis, *of the mind;* dux, *leader.*

A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r:* a-grĭ, *fields.*

After *q, ng,* and sometimes *s,* also in cuĭ (from quĭ and quis) and huĭc (from hĭc), *u* is pronounced together with the preceding letter, as in the English *queen.* It has no effect upon the quantity of the syllable in which or after which it stands: ali-cuĭ, *to any one;* un-guĭ-nis, *of fat;* quĭs, *who* (interrogative); quī, *who* (relative); cōn-suē-scō, *I am accustomed.*

---

[1] Observe that a long *syllable* does not necessarily contain a long *vowel.* In mēnsa, *table,* the *e* is long; the word is therefore to be pronounced *main-sa.* In mentis, *of the mind,* the *e* is short, and the word is pronounced *mĕn-tis.* The letter *h* is not a consonant, and does not affect the length of syllables.

7. *Accent.*

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: pa'-ter, *father;* mā'-ter, *mother.*

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long; otherwise on the antepenult: ca-pel'-la, *a goat;* e-pi'-stu-la, *a letter;* te'-ne-brae, *darkness.*

A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable before the enclitic: ego'que, *and I;* ibis'ne, *shall you go?*

5.   ENGLISH METHOD.[1]

Latin is pronounced by the English method just as if the words were English. The rules for quantity and accent are the same as in the Roman method, but the rules for quantity are generally disregarded except in so far as they affect the accent. In dividing words into syllables those who adopt the English pronunciation should observe the following rules : —

1. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* following a penultimate or any unaccented vowel belongs with the following vowel : pa-ter, *father;* re-gi-na, *queen;* ma-tro-na, *matron.*

2. A single consonant belongs with any preceding accented vowel, not penultimate, except *u*, but not when *e* or *i* before another vowel follows : dom-i-nus, *master;* but mo-ne-o, *I advise.*

3. In all other cases two or more consonants between two vowels are separated : cor-pus, *body;* im-pro-bus, *wicked.*

6.   PARTS OF SPEECH.

The kinds of words used in language are called parts of speech. They are the noun, the adjective, the pronoun,

---

[1] Still used in the U. S. in about sixty colleges.

the verb, and the particles, which include the **adverb**, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

7.   GENDER.

The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine: **Caesar,** *Caesar;* **vir,** *man;* **Rhēnus,** *Rhine;* **Notus,** *South wind;* **Iānuārius,** *January.*

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine: **Iūlia,** *Julia;* **fīlia,** *daughter;* **Ītalia,** *Italy;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* **Britannia,** *Britain;* **pōpulus,** *poplar.*

Indeclinable nouns are neuter: **nihil,** *nothing.*

Special rules will be given later.

8.   INFLECTION.

The relations between words are denoted in English for the most part by means of prepositions and auxiliaries or by the order of the words. When we say *the master of the house,* the relation between *master* and *house* is denoted by the preposition *of;* when we say *the dog bites the man,* the relation between the *dog,* the *act of biting,* and the *man,* is denoted by the order of the words; for if the order is reversed, the relations are also reversed. When we say *I love him,* the forms of the words show the relations. In Latin the relations between words are denoted almost exclusively by the forms of the words themselves, the forms being different according to the relations to be expressed. The changes in form which a word undergoes to denote different relations constitute the *Inflection* of the word. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *Declension;* the inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation.*

1. *Declension.*

Declined words have in Latin seven cases : *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative,* and *Locative.*

The Nominative is the case of the subject of the sentence.

The Genitive is used to denote possession and some other relations, and is most frequently to be rendered by *of* in English.

The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is most frequently to be rendered by *to* or *for.*

The Accusative is the case of the direct object.

The Vocative is the case of the person addressed. It has almost always the same form as the Nominative.

The Ablative expresses various relations to be expressed in English by prepositions ; as, *from, with, by, in,* etc.

The Locative case denotes the place in which. This case exists only in names of towns and a few other words, and has generally the same form as the Dative or Ablative, sometimes that of the Genitive.

There are five ways of declining nouns ; hence there are said to be five declensions.

Adjectives and pronouns are also declined, but with different forms for different genders.

2. *Conjugation.*

Latin verbs have three moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative ; also Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supines.

The tenses of verbs in Latin are the same as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, the Active and the Passive.

9.   **NUMBER.**

In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Inflected words have in Latin different forms for the two numbers.

————•o¢$◊$o•————

CHAPTER II.

First or *ā*-Declension.

10.   **PARADIGM.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. mēnsa, *a table.*	mēnsae, *tables.*
G. mēnsae, *of a table.*	mēnsārum, *of tables.*
D. mēnsae, *to* or *for a table.*	mēnsīs, *to* or *for tables.*
Ac. mēnsam, *table.*	mēnsās, *tables.*
V. mēnsa, *thou table.*	mēnsae, *ye tables.*
Ab. mēnsā, *from, by, with,* etc., *a table.*	mēnsīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *tables.*

1. In the above paradigm which cases are alike?

2. What is the quantity of final *a* in the nominative singular?

3. The cases are formed by adding endings to a common part, called the stem.

4. In the first declension the stem ends in *ā*.   This

final *ā* of the stem is called the stem-vowel[1] or characteristic.

5. The stem-vowel joined with the case-ending forms the termination.

6. The stem is **mēnsā**, and may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural.

7. Make a table of terminations from the paradigm above, and commit them to memory.

8. GENDER. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

11. VOCABULARY.

Helena, -ae, *f.,* Helen.
Lūcia, -ae, *f.,* Lucy.
ancilla, -ae, *f.,* maid-servant.
columba, -ae, *f.,* dove.
epistula, -ae, *f.,* letter.
fēmina, -ae, *f.,* woman.
gallīna, -ae, *f.,* hen.
mēnsa, -ae, *f.,* table.
puella, -ae, *f.,* girl.

amat, he, she, *or* it loves.
amant, they love.
laudat, he, she, *or* it praises.
laudant, they praise.
habet, he, she, *or* it has.
habent, they have.
et, *conj.,* and.
quid, what.

Decline the nouns in the vocabulary like **mēnsa.**

12. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. { Helena ancillam amat,
   Ancillam Helena amat,
   Amat Helena ancillam, } *Helen loves the maid-servant.*

2. { Ancilla amat Helenam,
   Helenam amat ancilla,
   Amat Helenam ancilla, } *the maid-servant loves Helen.*

---

[1] The long stem-vowel does not usually appear, and sometimes the case-ending is lost.

3. $\begin{cases} \textbf{Epistulās Lūcia habet,} \\ \textbf{Lūcia epistulās habet,} \\ \textbf{Habet epistulās Lūcia,} \end{cases}$ *Lucy has the letters.*

4. $\begin{cases} \textbf{Puella columbam habet,} \\ \textbf{Columbam habet puella,} \\ \textbf{Columbam puella habet,} \end{cases}$ *the girl has a dove.*

Notice in the above sentences that *a, an,* or *the* is used in the translation whenever the sense requires it, but that there are no corresponding Latin words. Notice, also, that the subject is in the nominative, and the object in the accusative.

13. RULE. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

14. RULE. — *The direct object is in the accusative.*

15.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helena puellam amat. 2. Lūciam puellae amant. 3. Ancilla habet mēnsam. 4. Gallīnās et columbās habet fēmina. 5. Puellae epistulās habent. 6. Fēmina Lūciam et Helenam laudat. 7. Laudant ancillās fēminae. 8. Quid habent Lūcia et Helena? 9. Lūcia columbam, Helena gallīnam habet. 10. Fēmina ancillam amat.

II. 1. The girl has a dove. 2. The maid-servant loves Lucy. 3. The women praise Helen. 4. What has the maid-servant? 5. The maid-servant has a letter. 6. The girls love the hens and the doves. 7. Lucy praises the maid-servant. 8. The girls have tables. 9. Helen and Lucy have letters. 10. The woman praises the girls.

A Roman Lady.

CHAPTER III.

First or *ā*-Declension. — *Continued.*

Genitive with Nouns.

16.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Helena bonam puellam amat,** *Helen loves the good girl.*
2. **Puella fīda Lūciam amat,** *the faithful girl loves Lucy.*
3. **Helena ancillam Lūciae laudat,** *Helen praises Lucy's maid-servant (the maid-servant of Lucy).*
4. **Lūcia Helenae columbam habet,** *Lucy has Helen's dove.*

Notice that the adjectives have the same terminations as their nouns, and that the adjective[1] may precede or follow its noun. Notice, also, that *Lūciae* limits *ancillam,* and does not mean the same person; that *Helenae* limits *columbam* and does not mean the same thing; and that *Lūciae* and *Helenae* are in the genitive.

17. RULE. — *The genitive[2] of a noun is used to limit another noun denoting a different person or thing.*

18.   VOCABULARY.

agricola, -ae, *m.,* farmer.	**bona,** good.
fīlia,[3] **-ae,** *f.,* daughter.	**fīda,** faithful.
fābula, -ae, *f.,* story.	**longa,** long.
nauta, -ae, *m.,* sailor.	**nārrat,** he, she, *or* it tells.
patria, -ae, *f.,* native land.	**nārrant,** they tell.
poēta, -ae, *m.,* poet.	

---

[1] The adjective when emphatic precedes its substantive, otherwise it follows it. It more often precedes.

[2] For similar uses of the abl. see 119, 126.

[3] The dative and ablative plural of **fīlia** is usually **fīliābus.**

1. Notice the gender of each noun in the preceding vocabulary. See **10. 8.**

2. The adjective forms given above are to be used only with feminine nouns, and are to be declined like **mēnsa.**

3. Decline together **bona puella, fīda fīlia.**

19.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Agricolae fīlia gallīnam et columbam habet. 2. Poētae bonās fābulās nārrant. 3. Nautae fīlia epistulam longam habet. 4. Nauta patriam amat. 5. Fīdās ancillās laudat fēmina. 6. Agricolae longās mēnsās habent. 7. Puellārum epistulās laudat Helena. 8. Fīlia poētae bonam fābulam nārrat. 9. Agricolārum fīliae columbās et gallīnās habent. 10. Fīdam ancillam laudat fēmina.

II. 1. What has the poet's maid-servant? 2. The poet's maid-servant has a long letter. 3. Good women have faithful maid-servants. 4. Sailors tell good stories. 5. The poet praises the farmer's daughter. 6. The sailor loves (his)[1] native land. 7. The good girls tell long stories. 8. The faithful maid-servants love the poet's daughter. 9. The sailors' daughters have long tables. 10. The farmer (has) hens, (his) daughter has doves. 11. The sailor has a good daughter and a faithful maid-servant.

20.   READING LESSON.

Quid nārrant poētae? Longās et bonās fābulās nārrant. Fēminae et puellae fābulās poētārum amant et laudant.

---

[1] Words in parenthesis are not to be expressed in Latin.

Quid habent nautārum fīliae? Nautārum fīliae gal-
līnās habent et columbās.

Cūr (*why*) amant ancillae nautās? Ancillae nautās
amant quod (*because*) fābulās nārrant.

———•◦✜◦•———

CHAPTER IV.

Present Indicative of Sum.

Agreement of Verbs.

21. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Person, **sum**, *I am*.	**sumus**, *we are*.
Second Person, **es**, *thou art*.	**estis**, *you are*.
Third Person, **est**, *he, she*, or *it is*.	**sunt**, *they are*.

22. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella columbās habet**, *the girl has doves*.
2. **Puellae columbās habent**, *the girls have doves*.
3. **Est bona**, *she is good*.
4. **Sumus fīdae**, *we are faithful*.

Notice that the subjects in (3) and (4) are not expressed by
separate words, but by the form of the verbs. Notice, also, that
the verbs have different forms for subjects of different persons
and numbers.

23. RULE. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in
number and person.*

24.   VOCABULARY.

bestia, -ae, *f.*, beast.	**grāta,** grateful, pleasant.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.	**lāta,** broad, wide.
insula, -ae, *f.*, island.	**māgna,** great, large.
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, wood.	**parva,** small, little.
umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade.	**sum,** I am.
ūva, -ae, *f.*, cluster of grapes, grapes.	**in,** *prep. (with abl.)*, in, on.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road.	**ubi,** *adv.*, where.

25.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sumus parvae.   2. Estis fīdae.   3. In māgnīs silvīs sunt bestiae.   4. Poētae fābulās grātās nārrant. 5. Britannia est patria nautārum.   6. Bestiae umbram silvārum amant.   7. Ūvae sunt in longā agricolae mēnsā. 8. Ubi est parva agricolae fīlia?   9. Parva agricolae fīlia est in īnsulā.   10. Lātae sunt in Britanniā viae. 11. In silvā est umbra grāta.   12. Britannia est īnsula māgna.   13. Viae longae, silvae lātae sunt.

II. 1. Where are you?   2. We are in the forest. 3. The little girl is the daughter of the good woman. 4. You (*singular*) are in the road.   5. I am in the shade. 6. (There) are broad forests on the island.   7. Great and small beasts love the shade of the forest.   8. The poet's little daughter has grapes on the table.   9. Britain is a large island.   10. The poets praise the grateful shade of the woods.
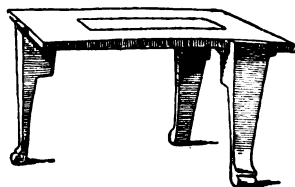
MENSA.

CHAPTER V.

Predicate Noun; Appositive.

26.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella est ancilla,** *the girl is a maid-servant.*
2. **Poēta est agricola,** *the poet is a farmer.*
3. **Lūcia est bona fēmina,** *Lucy is a good woman.*

Notice that *ancilla, agricola,* and *fēmina* are in the predicate and denote the same person as *puella, poēta,* and *Lūcia.* A noun thus used is called a *predicate noun.*

27. RULE. — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

28.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Poēta Lūciam fīliam amat,** *the poet loves his daughter Lucy.*
2. **Poēta servam Lūciae fīliae laudat,** *the poet praises the servant of his daughter Lucy.*

Notice that *fīliam* denotes the same person as *Lūciam,* and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Notice, also, that *fīliae* denotes the same person as *Lūciae,* and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Nouns thus used are called *appositives.*

29. RULE. — *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

30.   VOCABULARY.

aqua, -ae, *f.,* water.

aquila, -ae, *f.,* eagle.

cōpia, -ae, *f.,* plenty.

Graecia, -ae, *f.,* Greece.

incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.,* inhabitant.

praeda, -ae, *f.,* prey, booty.

schola, -ae, *f.,* school.

vīta, ae, *f.,* life.   [delights.

dēlectat, he, she *or* it pleases,

dēlectant, they please, delight.

nōn, *adv.,* not.

saepe, *adv.,* often.

31.   **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Aquilae sunt incolae silvārum. 2. Cōpia aquae in īnsulā est. 3. Lūcia fīda est agricolae ancilla. 4. In scholā est Helena, poētae fīlia. 5. Graecia poētārum patria est. 6. Lūcia Graeciam poētārum patriam amat. 7. Nautae vītam agricolārum nōn amant. 8. Columbae et gallīnae saepe praeda sunt aquilārum. 9. Bestiae sunt silvārum incolae. 10. Saepe grāta est agricolae vīta. 11. Ūvae agricolae poētam dēlectant. 12. Ubi, Lūcia, sunt epistulae Helenae?

II. 1. The poet's maid-servant tells plenty of pleasant stories. 2. The shade of the forest delights the inhabitants of the island. 3. The eagle is not an inhabitant of the water. 4. Greece is the native land of poets, Britain of sailors. 5. School delights Helen, the good girl. 6. The life of a sailor often delights the inhabitant of an island. 7. Good women often love and praise (their) faithful maid-servants. 8. The little girl is the prey of the beasts of the wood. 9. Where are the grapes? They are in the road. 10. The broad shade of the great forest does not delight the sailors.

AGRICOLA.

CHAPTER VI.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -us.

Indirect Object.

32. PARADIGM.

servus, *m., slave.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	servus	servī
G.	servī	servōrum
D.	servŏ	servīs
Ac.	servum	servōs
V.	serve	servī
Ab.	. servŏ	servīs

1. In the above paradigm, what cases are alike?

2. The stem ends in -*ŏ*; as, servŏ-.

3. The stem may be found by dropping the ending -*rum* of the genitive plural, and changing ō to ŏ.

4. Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

5. GENDER.—Nouns in -*us* of the second declension are masculine.

33. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Galba fīliae fābulam nārrat,** *Galba tells a story to his daughter.*

2. **Nautae agricolīs fābulās nārrant,** *the sailors tell stories to the farmers.*

3. **Nautīs nōn grāta est agricolae vīta,** *a farmer's life is not pleasing to sailors.*

Notice that *fīliae* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrat*, that *agricolīs* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrant*, and that *nautīs* is in the dative and depends upon *grāta*. Such datives are called *indirect objects.*

34. RULE.— *The indirect object is in the dative.*

35.   VOCABULARY.

amīcus, -ī, *m.*, friend.	**hortus, -ī,** *m.*, garden.
asinus, -ī, *m.*, ass.	**lupus, -ī,** *m.*, wolf.
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.	**pecūnia, -ae,** *f.*, money.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.	**servus, -ī,** *m.*, slave.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.	**dat,** he, she, *or* it gives.
haedus, -ī, *m.*, kid.	**dant,** they give.

semper, *adv.*, always.

1. Each of the adjectives thus far introduced, when used with masculine nouns, has a masculine form declined like **servus.**

For the feminine form, see **18.**

2. Decline together **bonus servus, hortus māgnus, parvus haedus.**

36.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Servus equō dominī aquam dat.   2. Dominus servō haedum dat.   3. Haedī saepe lupōrum et aquilārum sunt praeda.   4. Servī cōpiam cibī et aquae nōn semper habent.   5. Cōpia umbrae est in Helenae hortō. 6. Dominī servīs pecūniam nōn saepe dant.   7. Cibus servō grātus est.   8. Bonam fābulam fīliae Lūciae poēta nārrat. 9. Ubi est equus dominī?   10. Equus dominī et asinus in viā sunt.   11. Haedum parvum fīliae amīcī agricola dat.

II. 1. The kid is the pray of the wolf, the dove of the eagle.   2. The farmer's daughter, Helen, gives money to the slave.   3. The horse is in (his) master's garden. 4. The master's maid-servants give food to the slaves. 5. The horse is not the friend of the ass.   6. A long life is not always (a) good (one).   7. The garden (delights) the kid, the forest delights the wolf.   8. What has the faith-

ful slave? He has (his) master's money. 9. The poet tells pleasant stories to (his) friends. 10. The farmer gives food to (his) friend the sailor.

CHAPTER VII.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in -um; Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

Agreement of Adjectives.

37. PARADIGM.

bellum, *n.,* *war.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	bellum	bella
G.	bellī	bellōrum
D., Ab.	bellō	bellīs

1. The stem ends in *ŏ*; as, bellŏ-.
2. GENDER. — Nouns in *-um* are neuter.
3. Each adjective thus far introduced, when used with a neuter noun, has a neuter form declined like bellum.

These adjectives are declined in full as follows: —

38. PARADIGM.

bonus, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
V.	bone	bona	bonum
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
V.	bonī	bonae	bona
Ab.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

39. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hortus est māgnus.**
2. **Hortī sunt māgnī.**
3. **Mēnsa est māgna.**
4. **Mēnsae sunt māgnae.**
5. **Dōnum est māgnum.**
6. **Dōna sunt māgna.**
7. **Fīdum nautam amat.**
8. **Fīdōs nautās amant.**

Observe that each noun in the preceding sentences is limited by an adjective, and that each adjective has the same gender, number, and case as its noun. Notice especially *fīdum* and *fīdōs.*

40. RULE. — *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

41. VOCABULARY.

auxilium,[1] **-ī,** *n.,* help, assistance.
bellum, -ī, *n.,* war.
causa, -ae, *f.,* cause.
fīlius, -ī, *m.,* son.
fluvius, -ī, *m.,* river.
gladius, -ī, *m.,* sword.
Horātius, -ī, *m.,* Horace.

oppidum, -ī, *n.,* town.
rīpa, -ae, *f.,* bank (of a river).
superbia, -ae, *f.,* pride.
habitat, he, she lives.
habitant, they live.
stat, he, she, *or* it stands.
stant, they stand.

---

[1] Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* form the genitive in single ī. The vocative of nouns in *-ius* also ends in *i*, never in *ie.*

Adjectives already used in the masculine or feminine: —

bonus, -a, um.   **longus, -a, um.**
fīdus, -a, um.   **māgnus, a, -um.**
grātus, -a, um.   **parvus, -a, -um.**
lātus, -a, -um.

42.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fluviī lātī. 2. Oppida māgna. 3. Fīdō amīcō. 4. In īnsulā māgnā. 5. Bonōrum agricolārum. 6. Nautam parvum. 7. Bonōs dominōs. 8. Gladiō longō. 9. Parvae silvae. 10. In fluviīs longīs.

II. 1. Quid fīliō Horātiō dat fēmina? 2. Fēmina fīliō parvō pecūniam dat. 3. Fīlius asinum, haedum, gladium parvum habet. 4. Cōpiam cibī incolae īnsulārum habent. 5. Nautae in oppidō māgnō habitant. 6. Oppidum in rīpā lātī fluvī est. 7. Amīcōrum auxilium est nautīs grātum. 8. Superbia saepe est causa bellī. 9. Amīcōs fīlī fēmina semper laudat. 10. Fluviī Britanniae non longī sunt. 11. Ubi est Horātius, fīlius agricolae? 12. Horātius et amīcus in rīpā fluvī stant.

III. 1. Money is often a cause of pride. 2. Horace stands on the bank of a broad river. 3. The good woman gives a sword to (her) son, the sailor. 4. The assistance of the sailors is pleasant to the inhabitants of the town. 5. The wolves live in the woods, the kids in the gardens. 6. The master's son gives money to the good slave. 7. The large horse and the little ass are standing in the road. 8. Great booty delights the eagle. 9. The school is in a large town. 10. (There) is not always a great plenty of water in the rivers of Greece.

CHAPTER VIII.

Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -er and -ir.

Imperfect Indicative of the Verb Sum.

43.   PARADIGMS.

	puer, *m., boy.*	**ager**,[1] *m., field.*	**vir**, *m., man.*
		SINGULAR.	
N.	puer	ager	vir
G.	puerī	agrī	virī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō
Ac.	puerum	agrum	virum
V.	puer	ager	vir
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō
		PLURAL.	
N.	puerī	agrī	virī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
D.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
V.	puerī	agrī	virī
Ab.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

1. How do the terminations of nouns in *-er* and *-ir* differ from those of nouns in *-us* ?

2. What is the stem of puer ? of ager ? See **32**. 3.

3. Decline together **parvus puer, lātus ager, vir fīdus.**

4. GENDER. — Nouns in *-er* and *-ir* of the second declension are masculine.

---

[1] Most nouns in *-er* are declined like **ager.** The only one in this book declined like **puer** is līberī (plural).

44. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **eram,** *I was.*	**erāmus,** *we were.*
2. **erās,** *you were.*	**erātis,** *you were.*
3. **erat,** *he was.*	**erant,** *they were.*

45.   VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field.
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart.
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain.
līber, librī, *m.*, book.
magister, -trī, *m.*, master, teacher.
puer, -ī, *m.*, boy.

vir, virī, *m.*, man.
herī, yesterday.
laetus, -a, -um, glad, jolly.
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.
cūr, *adv.*, why ?
sed, *conj.*, but.
ō, *interj.*, O, oh.

46.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Agricolae fīliī erant validī puerī.   2. Fīliī auxilium magistrum dēlectat.   3. Helena longī bellī erat causa.   4. Cibum equōrum in carrō validō agricola habet.   5. Frūmentum est cibus equī et asinī.   6. Virī Graeciae fābulās poētārum laudant.   7. Ō puer, cūr in scholā nōn erās herī?   8. In agrīs et silvīs eram.   9. Puellae librōs bonōs amant.   10. Sed silvae et rīpae fluviōrum puerōs laetōs dēlectant.

II. 1. The grapes were in the garden, but the grain was in the field.   2. O boys, why were you glad yesterday?   3. The farmer's strong horse was in the river.   4. The faithful slave gives food to the strong horse.   5. The teacher is in the school, but the jolly boys are in the fields.   6. The boys give grain to the horse and the ass.   7. The help of his sons was pleasant to the teacher.   8. Horace, the farmer's son, has a sword.   9. The poet's books were not always good, but (his) pride was great.   10. The masters and slaves are standing in the garden.

47.   READING LESSON.

Cūr habet agricola frūmentum in carrō?   Frūmentum, equōrum cibus, in agrō erat.   Virī et fēminae, quī (*who*) in oppidō habitant, frūmentum emunt (*buy*); itaque (*therefore*) agricola in carrō frūmentum habet.   Oppidī incolae laetō agricolae pecūniam dant.   Agricola pecūniam capit (*takes*) et fīlium in (*to*) bonam scholam mittit (*sends*).

———•◦⦂⦂◦•———

CHAPTER IX.

Adjectives in -er.

Future Indicative of the Verb Sum ; Dative of Possessor.

48.   PARADIGMS.

Miser, *wretched.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
V.	miser	misera	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL.

N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
V.	miserī	miserae	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Pulcher, *beautiful.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
V.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō.

PLURAL.

N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

1. Observe that the masculine has the same peculiarities as substantives in -*er*. What are they ?

2. Most adjectives in -*er* of the second declension are declined like pulcher. The only exceptions in this book are miser and līber. Decline together, miser servus, equus niger.

49. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **erō,** *I shall be.*	**erimus,** *we shall be.*
2. **eris,** *you will be.*	**eritis,** *you will be.*
3. **erit,** *he will be.*	**erunt,** *they will be.*

50. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer librum habet,** *the boy has a book.*
2. **Est puerō liber,** *the boy has (there is to the boy) a book.*
3. **Horātius equum habet,** *Horace has a horse.*
4. **Est Horātiō equus,** *Horace has (there is to Horace) a horse.*

1. Notice the two ways of expressing possession. The form with the dative and the verb *sum* should be used in the exercises, unless the teacher prefer to have the sentence expressed in two ways. The dative thus used is called the *dative of possessor.*

51. RULE. — *The dative is used with sum to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

52. VOCABULARY.

populus, -ī, *m.,* people.	**multus, -a, -um,** much, *pl.* many.
socius, -ī, *m.,* associate, ally.	**niger, -gra, -grum,** black.
Sicilia, -ae, *f.,* Sicily.	**novus, -a, -um,** new.
victōria, -ae, *f.,* victory.	**pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** beautiful, pretty.
aeger, -gra, -grum, sick.	
līber, -era, -um, free.	**Rōmānus, -a, -um,** Roman ; *m.,* as *subst.,* a Roman.
miser, -era, -um, wretched, unhappy.	**hodiē,** *adv.,* to-day.

53. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Horātius equum nigrum et carrum novum habet. 2. Horātiō equus niger et carrus novus sunt. 3. Populus Rōmānus semper līber erat. 4. Multī servī erant Rōmānīs. 5. Vīta servōrum nōn semper misera erat. 6. Līberō populō nōn erit dominus. 7. In īnsulā Siciliā māgna erat cōpia frūmentī. 8. Pulchra īnsula Sicilia causa erat bellī. 9. Auxilium sociōrum est causa victōriae. 10. Multī et pulchrī librī sunt in magistrī mēnsā. 11. Aegrī sunt multī puerī hodiē, in scholā nōn sunt. 12. Nauta laetus eris, agricola validus erō.

II. 1. Why was the teacher not in the town yesterday? 2. The teacher was sick yesterday, but he will be in the town to-day. 3. The broad fields of Sicily were and always will be beautiful. 4. The wretched inhabitants of Sicily

were slaves of the Roman people. 5. The sons of the sailor have new swords. 6. The new and beautiful swords will be a cause of great pride. 7. The free inhabitants of the island had a great plenty of grain. 8. The broad river has beautiful banks. 9. The wretched man has the assistance of many friends. 10. Many strong men live in the towns and fields of Britain.

CHAPTER X.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

54. PARADIGMS.

	princeps, *m.*, chief.	rēx, *m.*, king.	mīles, *m.*, soldier.	caput, *n.*, head.
Stem	**princip-**	**rēg-**	**mīlit-**	**capit-**
	SINGULAR.			
N., *V.*	princeps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	principis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D.	principī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	principem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
Ab.	principe	rēge	mīlite	capite
	PLURAL.			
N., *Ac.*, *V.*	principēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G.	principum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D., *Ab.*	principibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

1. In the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant or *i*.

2. Stems ending in a consonant are classed according to their final letter, as mute stems and liquid stems.[1]

3. To find the stem, drop the ending *-um* of the genitive plural.

4. Make a table of the case-endings from **princeps.**

5. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative.

What happens when *c* (see *dux, ducis,* in **55**) or *g* precedes the ending *s*? When *t* precedes the ending *s*?

55.   VOCABULARY.

caput, -itis, *n.*, head.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman.
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer.
hospes, -itis, *m.*, guest.

mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
princeps, -ipis, *m.*, chief.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired.

cottīdiē, *adv.*, every day.

56.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēgēs et prīncipēs saepe multōs et pulchrōs equōs habent. 2. Multī rēgēs sociī erant populī Rōmānī. 3. Eques equō frūmentum cottīdiē dat. 4. Mīlitēs rēgis sunt in īnsulā Siciliā. 5. Helenae hodiē hospitēs in oppidō erimus. 6. Māgnum caput est nigrō equō. 7. Populus Britanniae ducēs multōs habet. 8. Dēfessī, nōn aegrī, herī erant virī. 9. Librōs bonōs fīdīs puerīs magistrī dant. 10. Puerī fābulās Homērī prīncipis Graecōrum poētārum amant. 11. Victōria sociōrum rēgem dēlectat.

II. 1. Every day you will be the guests of kings and chiefs. 2. The Greeks were allies of the Romans in the war. 3. The new leader of the horsemen has a black

---

[1] For sibilant stems, see **63.**

horse. 4. The soldiers have swords, the horsemen have horses, the farmers have carts. 5. The pretty girls give water to the tired soldiers. 6. Why is the teacher standing on the bank of the river? 7. The little boy's new books are in the water. 8. Why is the king's guest unhappy to-day? 9. He is free, but he is always sick. 10. The strong chief is the head of a glad people.

57. READING LESSON.

Rōmānī in rīpā fluvī habitant. Virī Rōmānī validī, fēminae Rōmānae pulchrae erant. Prīmus (*the first*) Rōmānōrum rēx Rōmulus erat, quī (*who*) oppidum in rīpā condidit (*founded*). Prīmō (*at first*) fēminae Rōmānīs nōn erant, sed Sabīnōrum (*of the Sabines*) fīliās rapuērunt (*they seized*).

———o⚬✼⚬o———

CHAPTER XI.

Third Declension: Mute Stems. — *Continued.*

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.

58. PARADIGMS.

	voluptās, *f.*, pleasure.	pēs, *m.*, foot.	custōs, *m. and f.*, keeper.
Stem	voluptāt-	ped-	custōd-
	SINGULAR.		
N., V.	voluptās	pēs	custōs
G.	voluptātis	pedis	custōdis
D.	voluptātī	pedī	custōdī
Ac.	voluptātem	pedem	custōdem
Ab.	voluptāte	pede	custōde

N., Ac., V.	voluptātēs	pedēs	cūstōdēs
G.	voluptātum	pedum	cūstōdum
D., Ab.	voluptātibus	pedibus	cūstōdibus

What happens when *d* or *t* precedes the nominative ending *s*?

59. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts[1] *of Amō.*

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PART.
amō, *I love;*	amāre, *to love;*	amāvī, *I loved;*	amātus,[2] *loved.*

1. To find the present stem of a verb, drop the final *re* of the present infinitive active.

2. Verbs are said to be of the first conjugation, when the present stem ends in *ā*; *i.e.* when the present infinitive active ends in *āre.*

3. Give the principal parts of laudō, nārrō, habitō, dēlectō.

4. Dō, dăre, dedī, dătus, which resembles a verb of the first conjugation, has a short stem-vowel, *ă.*

60. PARADIGM.

Present Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amō, *I love.*[3]	amāmus, *we love.*
2. amās, *you love.*	amātis, *you love.*
3. amat, *he loves.*	amant, *they love.*

Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

---

[1] These are called principal parts because, when these are known, all forms of the verb may be readily found.

[2] In this book, when a verb has no perf. pass. part., the fut. act. part. ending in -ūrus is given as the fourth of the prin. parts.

[3] Also *I do love,* and *I am loving.*

61.   VOCABULARY.

cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, state.

cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*, troops.

cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, keeper.

Fābricius, -ī, *m.*, Fabricius.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

pars, -partis, *f.*, part.

probitās, -ātis, *f.*, honesty.

spēlunca, -ae, *f.*, cave.

voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, procure, afford.

portō, -āre -āvī, -ātus, carry.

dē, *prep.* (*with abl.*), concerning, about.

in, *prep.* (*with acc.*), to, into, against.

62.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nārrās, nārrātis.   2. Portō, portāmus.   3. In rīpā stant.   4. In oppidō habitāmus.   5. Rēgem amāmus. 6. Puerōs laudās.   7. In spēluncam praedam portātis. 8. Parō nārrāre.

II. 1. I tell, we are telling.   2. You carry grain. 3. We prepare troops.   4. You are giving help.   5. We are carrying money.   6. I praise the boys.   7. We stand at the gate.   8. You carry books to school.

III. 1. Homērus prīnceps erat poētārum Graecōrum. 2. Fābulās dē mīlitibus et ducibus nārrat.   3. Voluptātem multam puerīs et puellīs fābulae parant.   4. Cīvitās Rōmāna probitātem Fābricī laudat.   5. Cōpiae rēgis māgnam oppidī partem occupant.   6. Cūstōdēs fīdī in portā stant.   7. Lupus in spēluncam praedam portat. 8. Quid, puerī, in scholam portātis hodiē?   9. Dē Helenā et Graecīs librōs in scholam portāmus.   10. Parat rēx cīvitātēs Graeciae occupāre.   11. Cūr amat aeger eques equum nigrum?   12. Equus dēfessus miserum equitem portat.

IV. 1. Why are the king's soldiers seizing the gate?
2. The allies of the Greeks are preparing assistance for
the town. 3. Part of the new troops are horsemen.
4. The people of a free state do not love kings. 5. Yes-
terday the chief's guest was tired, but to-day he affords
the chief much pleasure. 6. Every day he tells new
stories about the honesty of Fabricius. 7. And he tells
Homer's story about the Greek chiefs and the guard of
the cave. 8. Wretched little boy, what are you carry-
ing? 9. I am not wretched. I am carrying new and
pretty books to school. 10. Why do you love the school?
11. The teacher is always good, and the boys are jolly,
and the girls are pretty.

CHAPTER XII.

Third Declension: Liquid Stems.

First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active.

63.   PARADIGMS.

	cōnsul, *m.*, consul.	victor, *m.*, victor.	virgō, *f.*, virgin.	corpus, *n.*, wound.
Stem	cōnsul-	victor-	virgin-	corpos-[1]
		SINGULAR.		
N., V.	cōnsul	victor	virgō	corpus
G.	cōnsulis	victōris	virginis	corporis
D.	cōnsulī	victōrī	virginī	corporī
Ac.	cōnsulem	victōrem	virginem	corpus
Ab.	cōnsule	victōre	virgine	corpore

---

[1] This was originally an *s* stem, but *s* became *r* between two vowels.

PLURAL.

N., Ac., V.	cŏnsulēs	victōrēs	virginēs	corpora
G.	cŏnsulum	victōrum	virginum	corporum
D., Ab.	cŏnsulĭbus	victōrĭbus	virginĭbus	corporĭbus

64. In English, questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* require no interrogative word. For the Latin method of expressing such questions, see the following sentences —

1. **In urbe ne habitās?** *Do you live in the city?*
2. **Nōnne servus est miser?** *Is not the slave unhappy?* or, *The slave is unhappy, is he not?*
3. **Num aeger est magister?** *Is the master sick?* or, *The master is not sick, is he?*

The interrogative *ne* is an enclitic, always appended to the emphatic word. See **4.** and **7.**

Nōnne expects the answer *yes*; *num* expects the answer *no*; *ne* does not indicate what answer is expected.

65. PARADIGM.

Imperfect Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **amābam,** *I was loving.*[1]	**amābāmus,** *we were loving.*
2. **amābās,** *you were loving.*	**amābātis,** *you were loving.*
3. **amābat,** *he was loving.*	**amābant,** *they were loving.*

Inflect the imperfect indicative active of **laudō, nārrō, dō, parō.**

66. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Portābam, portābāmus. 2. Nārrābās, nārrābātis.
3. Dabam, stābāmus. 4. Dēlectābat, dēlectābant.

---

[1] Also *I loved, I did love.*

5. Laudās, laudābās.   6. Habitābās, habitābāmus.
7. Portābat, portābāmus. 8. Occupābam, occupābat.

II. 1. You (sing.) were carrying, he was standing.
2. I lived, you (pl.) were living. 3. I did tell, we were
telling.   4. He prepared, they prepared.   5. It was
standing, they were standing. 6. We were giving, they
were giving. 7. I prepared, we prepared. 8. I was
praising, you (pl.) were praising.

67.   VOCABULARY.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.,* consul.
corpus, -oris, *n.,* body.
gēns, gentis, *f.,* race, tribe.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.,* Italy.
leō, -ōnis, *m.,* lion.
māter, mātris, *f.,* mother.
pēs, pedis, *m.,* foot.
Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.,* Pyrrhus.
uxor, -ōris, *f.,* wife.
virgō, -inis, *f.,* maiden, virgin.
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, kill.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sur-
pass, overcome.
victor, -ōris, *m.,* victor, con-
queror.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
wound.
ē, ex (before vowels), *prep.* (*with
abl.*), from, out of.
ne
nōnne } signs of questions.
num

68.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōnne probitās Fābricī Pyrrhum dēlectat?
2. Probitās fīliōrum mātrī māgnam voluptātem parābat.
3. Multōs equitēs Rōmānōs cōpiae Pyrrhī vulnerant.
4. Rōmānī saepe victōrēs erant et multās gentēs superā-
bant. 5. In portīs custōdēs fīdī mīlitum Rōmānōrum
erant.   6. Dux multās Ītaliae cīvitātēs occupābat.
7. Virgō ex hortō ūvās pulchrās portābat. 8. Nōnne leō
est rēx bestiārum? ·9. Validōs equōs agricolae leō necat.

10. Estne uxor cōnsulis māter Fābricī? 11. Num in
Italiā habitābat? 12. Pedēs et caput partēs corporis
sunt.

II. 1. Were the allies overcoming the forces of Pyrrhus?
2. They were seizing the gates and killing the inhabitants
of the town. 3. They were killing the mothers, wives,
(and) daughters of the soldiers. 4. Was the lion wound-
ing the maiden? 5. The lion was carrying the beautiful
maiden into the cave. 6. He was not carrying the maiden
from (out of) the town, was he? 7. He was carrying
the maiden from (out of) the king's garden. 8. The
leaders of the tribes of Britain were kings. 9. Do not
the Roman soldiers surpass the tribes of Britain? They
surpass (them). 10. The stories of Homer delight many
races.

69. READING LESSON.

THE EVILS OF WAR.

Nōnne bellum semper malum (*bad*) est? Semper
malum est. Cūr malum est? Nōnne mīlitibus et ducibus
voluptātem parat? Nōn semper mīlitibus voluptātem
parat, et fēminīs māgnum parat dolōrem (*grief*). Saepe
enim (*for*) mātrēs fīliōs, sorōrēs (*sisters*) frātrēs (*brothers*),
virginēs amātōrēs (*lovers*) āmittunt (*lose*). Et mīlitēs
ipsī (*themselves*) saepe aegrī ē bellō in patriam revertunt
(*return*).
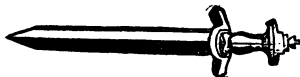
GLADIUS.

CHAPTER XIII.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

*First Conjugation, Future Indicative Active; Ablative
of Instrument.*

70. PARADIGM.

Future Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amābō, *I shall love.*	amābimus, *we shall love.*
2. amābis, *you will love.*	amābitis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he will love.*	amābunt, *they will love.*

71. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Vulnerābō, vulnerābimus. 2. Necābat, portābit.
3. Nārrābō, nārrābāmus. 4. Necābimus, stābimus.
5. Superābis, superābunt. 6. Stābit, stābunt. 7. Parā-
bitis, necābunt. 8. Habitābit, vulnerābant.

II. 1. I shall carry, we shall tell. 2. We will kill,
they will kill. 3. You (sing.) will seize, they will seize.
4. He was living, he will live. 5. I will tell, they will
tell. 6. I shall stand, he will give. 7. It will please.
8. You (sing.) will stand, you (pl.) will carry.

72. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Poēta fābulīs puellās dēlectat,** *the poet delights the girls
   with stories.*
2. **Gladiō equitem vulnerat,** *he wounds the horseman with a
   sword.*

Observe that *fābulīs* and *gladiō* are in the ablative case, and
that they show the instrument or means employed in doing the

act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument* or *means*.

73. RULE.— *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

74. VOCABULARY.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.	pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.	vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call.
proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle.	mittit, he, she, *or* it sends.
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.	mittunt, they send.
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice.	ad, *prep. (with acc.)*, to, for, near.

75. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōnsulēs, prīncipēs cīvitātis Rōmānae, ducēs sunt cōpiārum. 2. Cōnsulēs multās Ītaliae gentēs superābunt. 3. Victōrēs ē proeliō in oppidum equitem mittunt. 4. Nārrābitne eques custōdibus portae dē proeliō? 5. Agricolae lapidibus mīlitēs vulnerābunt. 6. Mīlitēs agricolārum mātrēs, uxōrēs, sorōrēs, fīliās gladiīs necābunt. 7. Vōx puerī magna est: sorōrem vocābit. 8. Nōnne ad portam oppidī pūgnābimus? 9. Pūgnābitis et oppidī partem occupābitis. 10. Bonae puellae nōmen erat Helena. 11. Helena mātrī multam voluptātem parābit. 12. Virgō sorōrem ad mātrem mittit.

II. 1. To-day the teacher will tell pretty stories about the battles of the Greek chiefs. 2. They overcome the troops of many kings. 3. (Their) wives and maidens were living in Greece, (their) native land. 4. We shall always praise the names of the victors. 5. The lion has a large head and a long body. 6. In the lion's den (cave) there are the heads and feet of his miserable prey.

7. Pyrrhus, a king of a part of Greece, gives (carries) assistance to a tribe of Italy.   8. Pyrrhus defeats Fabricius, a Roman general.   9. A slave of Pyrrhus sends a letter to Fabricius.   10. I will kill Pyrrhus.   11. Will you give money to the slave of Fabricius?   12. Fabricius sends the slave and the letter to Pyrrhus.   13. Will Pyrrhus praise the slave?   14. He will not praise the slave, but he will praise the honesty of Fabricius.

———o⚬⟡⚬o———

CHAPTER XIV.

Third Declension: Stems in i.

First Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active ; Perfect Indicative of Sum ; Ablative of Manner.

76.   PARADIGMS.

	ignis, _m._, fire.	**hostis, _m. and f._,** enemy.	**clădēs, _f._,** disaster.
Stem	**igni-**	**hosti-**	**clădi-**
		SINGULAR.	
_N., V._	ignis	hostis	clădēs
_G._	ignis	hostis	clădis
_D._	ignī	hostī	clădī
_Ac._	ignem	hostem	clădem
_Ab._	ignī, -e	hoste	clăde
		PLURAL.	
_N., V._	ignēs	hostēs	clădēs
_G._	ignium	hostium	clădium
_D., Ab._	ignibus	hostibus	clădibus
_Ac._	ignēs, -īs	hostēs, -īs	clădēs, -īs

1. Most nouns in -*is* are declined like-*hostis*, some like *ignis*; but a few have only -*im* in the accusative singular, and only -*ī* in the ablative singular.

2. Whenever any of these nouns are introduced in this book that are not declined like *hostis*, their peculiarities will be given.

3. Nouns in -*ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (that is, not having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative) are declined like *clādēs*.

77. PARADIGMS.

Perfect Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
1.	amāvī,	{ *I loved.* *I have loved.*	amāvimus,	{ *we loved.* *we have loved.*
2.	amāvistī,	{ *you loved.* *you have loved.*	amāvistis,	{ *you loved.* *you have loved.*
3.	amāvit,	{ *he loved.* *he has loved.*	amāvērunt, or amāvēre,	{ *they loved.* *they have loved.*

Perfect Indicative of Sum.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
1.	fuī,	{ *I was.* *I have been.*	fuimus,	{ *we were.* *we have been.*
2.	fuistī,	{ *you were.* *you have been.*	fuistis,	{ *you were.* *you have been.*
3.	fuit,	{ *he was.* *he has been.*	fuērunt, or fuēre,	{ *they were.* *they have been.*

1. Notice that the perfect stem of **amō** is the present stem + *v*. It may be found in any verb by dropping the final *ī* of the first person of the perfect indicative active.

2. Observe that the endings of the perfect are the same for both **sum** and **amō**. Make a table of them, and commit to memory.

78.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Vocābam, pūgnābō, vulnerāvī.   2. Necāvistī, pūgnāvērunt.   3. Vulnerāvit, necāvērunt.   4. Portāvī, occupāvistī, parāvit.   5. Stetimus, nārrāvī, dedit.   6. Dē-lectābit, dabat, laudāvit.   7. Amābimus, amāvimus, amāvit.   8. Portāvistī, portāvistis, portāvit.

II. 1. I have called, you (pl.) fought.   2. You (sing.) have praised, they have carried.   3. We were standing, we have stood.   4. I have lived, he has lived.   5. He has told, they have told.   6. You (sing.) have given, you (pl.) have given.

79.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Dux dē victōriā cum superbiā nārrat,** *the general tells about his victory with pride.*
2. **Dux māgnā cum superbiā dē victōriā nārrat,** *the general with great pride tells about his victory.*
3. **Dux māgnā superbiā dē victōriā nārrat,** *the general with great pride tells about his victory.*

Observe that in the sentences *cum superbiā, māgnā cum super-biā,* and *māgnā superbiā,* show the manner of the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of manner.*

80. RULE. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with* **cum,** *or with a limiting adjective, or with both.*

Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

81. VOCABULARY.

canis, -is, (*gen. pl.* canum), *m. and f.*, dog.

clādēs, -is, *f.*, loss, disaster, defeat.

finis, -is, *m.*, end; *pl.* territory.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

nāvis, -is, *f*, ship.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, put to flight.

facit, he, she, *or* it makes, does.

faciunt, they make, do.

cum, *prep.* (*with abl.*), with.

82. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Uxor cōnsulis māgnā vōce canem vocāvit. 2. Pyrrhus hostēs māgnā clāde superāvit et fugāvit. 3. Victor in hostium fīnēs cōpiās mittit. 4. Mīlitēs cum voluptāte oppida hostium occupant. 5. Oppidōrum incolae lapidibus pūgnābant et multōs vulnerābant. 6. Pater multā superbiā māgnum fīlī corpus laudat. 7. Quid faciunt hostēs in nāvibus? Ignem faciunt. 8. Pyrrhō rēgis nōmen erat. Rōmānōs multīs proeliīs superāvit. 9. Equitēs, portam oppidī occupābitis? 10. Portam occupāvimus et hostēs fugāvimus. 11. Hostium dux virginēs ex oppidō ad cōnsulem mittit. 12. Fuimus parvī puerī; erimus māgnī virī.

II. 1. (There) was a tired little girl in the woods. 2. She called (her) mother in a loud (*māgnus*) voice. 3. The father of the little girl sends (his) faithful dog to the woods. 4. Will the wolves kill the little girl and the dog? 5. Friends will assist (carry assistance), and with stones and loud cries (*vōx*) they will put to flight the wild beasts. 6. The faithful dog was standing near the feet of the little girl. 7. What was the name of the faithful dog? 8. The little girl called the dog Lion. 9. Lucy was a guest of the consul's sister yesterday.

10. Why do the farmers build (make) fires on the edge
(end) of the woods? 11. With fires they drive away
the wild beasts.

83.   READING LESSON.

VARIETY THE SPICE OF LIFE.

Puerī, ubi erātis herī? In silvā erāmus. Cūr in scholā
nōn erātis? In scholā nōn erāmus quod (*because*) ma-
gister aeger erat. Num laetī erātis quod magister aeger
erat? Nōn hāc (*this*) dē (*for*) causā laetī erāmus, sed
quod ē scholā līberī erāmus Nōnne scholam amātis?
Sāne (*yes*), amāmus scholam, sed cottīdiē in scholam
īmus (*we go*). Itaque (*therefore*) herī in silvā errāre (*to
wander*) nōbīs (*to us*) grātum erat. Intellegō (*I under-
stand*).   Varietās (*variety*) vītam iūcundam (*pleasant*)
facit.

———•○›◦‹○•———

CHAPTER XV.

Third Declension: Stems in i. — *Continued.*

*First Conjugation, Pluperfect and Future Perfect
Indicative Active; Pluperfect and Future Perfect
Indicative of Sum; Ablative of Accompaniment.*

84.   PARADIGMS.

	mare, n.,		**animal, n.,**	
	sea.		*animal.*	
Stem	**mari-**		**animāli-**	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
G.	maris	marium	animālis	animālium
D., Ab.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

Observe that the above nouns have *i* stems, and that the nominative is the same as the stem, except that the characteristic *i* has either been changed to *e*, as in **mare**, or dropped, as in **animal.**

85. **PARADIGMS.**

Indicative Active of Amō.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amāveram, *I had loved.*	amāverāmus, *we had loved.*
2. amāverās, *you had loved.*	amāverātis, *you had loved.*
3. amāverat, *he had loved.*	amāverant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. amāverō, *I shall have loved.*	amāverimus, *we shall have loved.*
2. amāveris, *you will have loved.*	amāveritis, *you will have loved.*
3. amāverit, *he will have loved.*	amāverint, *they will have loved.*

Indicative of Sum.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fueram, *I had been.*	fuerāmus, *we had been.*
2. fuerās, *you had been.*	fuerātis, *you had been.*
3. fuerat, *he had been.*	fuerant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. fuerō, *I shall have been.*	fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
2. fueris, *you will have been.*	fueritis, *you will have been.*
3. fuerit, *he will have been.*	fuerint, *they will have been.*

86. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Fugāverat, fugāverit. 2. Vocāverāmus, vocāverant. 3. Pūgnāveris, pūgnāverimus. 4. Necāverant, necāverint, necāvērunt. 5. Portāverās, portāveris, portā-

vistī.   6. Parāverō, parāveram, parāverātis.   7. Stābās,
stetit, steterat, steterit.   8. Vulnerāvī, vulnerāverat, vul-
nerāverō.

II. 1. I had told, I have told.   2. You (pl.) had
praised, you (sing.) will have praised.   3. He had lived,
he will have lived.   4. We shall have told, we had told.
5. I have carried, we had carried, they had carried.
6. You (sing.) had called, you (pl.) will have called.
7. He had fought, you had overcome.   8. They have
called, he had fought, they will have fought.

87.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Pater in urbem Horātium cum sorōre mittit,** *the father
    sends Horace into the city with his sister.*
2. **Lūcia in rīpā cum mātre stat,** *Lucy is standing on the bank
    with her mother.*

Observe that *sorōre* is the person with whom Horace is sent,
and *mātre* is the person with whom Lucy stands.   The ablative
thus used is called the *ablative of accompaniment.*

88.   RULE. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the abla-tive with* **cum.**

In military phrases *cum* is often omitted; as, **Cōnsul Fā-
bricium māgnīs cōpiīs in Siciliam mittit,** *the consul sends
Fabricius with a large force to Sicily.*

89.   VOCABULARY.

animal, -ālis, *n.,* animal.
flūmen, -inis, *n.,* river,
iter, itineris, *n.,* march, jour-
    ney, route.
lītus, litoris, *n.,* shore.
mare, -is, *n.,* sea.

nūntius, -ī, *m.,* messenger.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, an-
    nounce, report.
quod, *conj.,* because.
statim, *adv.,* at once, immedi-
    ately.

ā, ab (before vowels), *prep.* (*with abl.*), from, by.
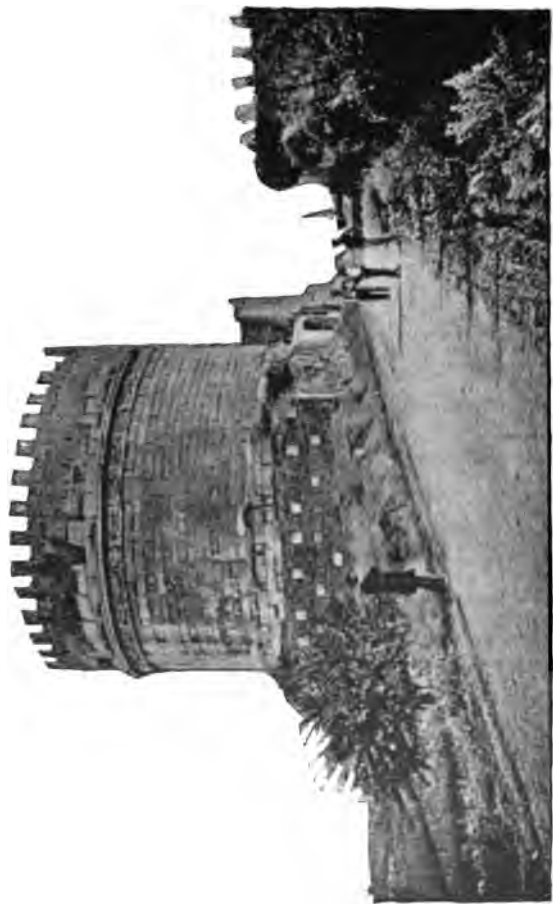
TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA NEAR ROME.

90. ・ EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux ā lītore maris in oppidum nūntium mittit.
2. Nūntium mittit quod cum hostibus pūgnāvit. 3. Hostēs superāvit et māgnā clāde fugāvit. 4. Nūntius cōnsulī statim dē clāde hostium nūntiābit. 5. Flūminibus rīpae, marī lītora sunt. 6. Victōrēs dēfessī in hostium fīnēs equitēs mittunt. 7. Aqua flūminis et umbra silvae animālia dēlectāverant. 8. Vōce et lapidibus canem fugāvimus. 9. Herī in agrīs fuimus; hodiē oppidum occupāverimus. 10. Ad portās oppidī īgnem portāverimus. 11. Cūstōdēs portārum superāverimus et necāverimus. 12. Fābricius cōnsul cum uxōre et sorōre in Graecōrum fīnēs iter facit.

II. 1. Many had praised the name of the consul. 2. The ship has carried the consul with (his) troops from Italy to the shore of Britain. 3. What is the consul doing in Britain? He is marching (makes a march) against the tribes of the island. 4. He will have overcome the inhabitants of Britain immediately. 5. A messenger will report the victory[1] to the consul. 6. I have put the enemy[2] to flight with great loss. 7. I shall carry to Italy the chiefs, and they will be slaves. 8. The slaves will build (make) fires, they will carry water. 9. The slaves will procure food for (their) masters, and grain for (their) masters' horses. 10. They have often delighted the people because they fought (were fighting) with wild-beasts.

---

[1] Use dē with abl.   [2] Use the plural.

CHAPTER XVI.

Third Declension: Mixed Stems.[1]

Ablative of Time.

91.   PARADIGMS.

	nox, *f.,* **night.**	**urbs,** *f.,* **city.**	**mōns,** *m.,* **mountain.**
Stem	**noct–**	**urb–**	**mont–**

SINGULAR.

N., V.	nox	urbs	mōns
G.	noctis	urbis	montis
D.	noctī	urbī	montī
Ac.	noctem	urbem	montem
Ab.	nocte	urbe	monte

PLURAL.

N., V.	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
G.	noctium	urbium	montium
D., Ab.	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
Ac.	noctēs -īs	urbēs -īs	montēs -īs

Which class of nouns do these resemble in the singular?
In the plural?

Like these words are declined: 1. Most nouns in *-ns*
and *-rs*; 2. Monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a
consonant.

---

[1] These were originally consonant stems, as given above, but in the
plural they are declined like *i* stems.

92. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Cōnsul nocte oppidum occupāvit,** *the consul seized the town in the night.*
2. **Ūnā hōrā in urbe erō,** *within an hour I shall be in the city.*

Observe that *nocte* shows the time *when* the town was seized, and *ūnā hōrā* the time *within which* I shall reach the city.

93. RULE. — *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by *in* with the ablative.

94. VOCABULARY.

homō, hominis, *m.,* man.
hōra, ae, *f.,* hour.
mōns, montis, *m.,* mountain.
nox, noctis, *f.,* night.
sīgnum, -ī, *n.,* sign, signal, standard.
tempus, -oris, *n.,* time.

urbs, urbis, *f.,* city.
malus, -a, -um, bad, evil.
prīmus, -a, -um, first.
ante, *prep. (with acc.),* before.
post, *prep. (with acc.),* after, behind.

95. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Vocābam, laudābō, nārrāvī. 2. Vocāsne, pūgnā-bāsne, nūntiābisne ? 3. Fugāvit, vocāverat, parāverit. 4. Habitābit, stetit, dabat. 5. Nārrāverat, laudābās, fugābis. 6. Parāvistis, portāveritis, laudāverātis. 7. Dedērunt, fugāvērunt, vocāverant. 8. Habitāvit, occupābat, portāvit.

II. 1. It pleases, it will please, it pleased. 2. You
(sing.) were fighting, you (sing.) have called, you (sing.)
had put to flight. 3. He was praising, he has called,
he will report. 4. I will call, I was telling, I had
fought. 5. You (pl.) were standing, you (pl.) will
call, you (pl.) had fought. 6. They fought, they have
prepared, they had reported. 7. We shall tell, we have
carried, we had prepared. 8. I have given, I was fight-
ing, we were reporting. 9. He was living, he told, he
had fought.

III. 1. Prīmā hōrā noctis nūntium in urbem mittit.
2. Statim dē hostium clāde nūntiābit. 3. Cōnsul ante
portam urbis in rīpā flūminis stat. 4. Post longum tempus
bellī fīnem faciunt. 5. Asinī, equī, haedī, canēs, lupī,
leōnēs, hominēs animālia sunt. 6. Sīgna Rōmānōrum
mīlitum aquilae erant. 7. Māgna flūmina multās nāvēs
portant ā montibus in mare. 8. Bellī temporibus nāvibus
pūgnābimus cum hostibus patriae. 9. Cūr puerōs patris
fābulae dēlectābant, puellās nōn dēlectābant? 10. Quod
dē bellīs cum proeliīs et īgnibus et clādibus nārrā-
bat. 11. Poētārum fābulae puellīs voluptātem parāve-
rant. 12. Malī virī saepe bonās habent uxōrēs.

IV. 1. Large animals live in the sea. 2. Why did the
servant call Horace from the garden? 3. Horace's father
at night will tell about (his) journey. 4. The general sends
from the island a letter to the king. 5. Before night a
ship will carry the messenger with (his) son from the
shore of Britain. 6. The general had at once given
the signal. 7. The forces of the king are marching
into the territory of the enemy. 8. In the first hour
of the night we will put to flight the guards of the gate.
9. After the defeat of the enemy we will report the

víctory[1] to the king. 10. He praised (his) soldiers because they were conquerors.

96. READING LESSON.

HORACE AND THE APPLES.

Horātius, agricolae fīlius, bonus erat puer, sed malōs amīcōs amābat. Agricola igitur (*therefore*) puerō calathum (*basket*) pōmōrum (*apples*) plēnum (*full*) dat. Bona erant in calathō pōma, pauca tamen (*nevertheless*) erant putrida (*rotten*). Puer dōnum (*gift*) magnā cum dīligentiā (*diligence*) cūrābat (*cared for*), sed mala pōma maculābant (*spotted*) bona. Tum agricola fīliō dicit (*says*): "Pōma mala maculant bona; certē (*surely*) amīcī malī bonum maculābunt puerum."

━━━●◆●◆◦━━━

CHAPTER XVII.

Third Declension.

Rules for Gender.

Make a complete table of the nominative endings of nouns of the third declension.

97. Gender. 1. Nouns in -*ō*, -*or*, -*ōs*, -*er*, and -*ĕs* increasing in the genitive, are masculine, except those in -*dō*, -*gō*, and abstract and collective nouns in -*iō*.

2. Nouns in -*ās*, -*ēs* not increasing in the genitive, -*is*, -*ūs* (long), -*dō*, -*gō*, -*iō* (abstract and collective), -*s* (following a consonant), -*x*, are feminine.

---

[1] See note on **90**, II. 5.

3. Nouns in -*a*, -*e*, -*i*, -*y*, -*c*, -*l*, -*n*, -*t*, -*ar*, -*ur*, -*us* (short), are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, and the learner should notice each when he first meets it.

These rules are subordinate to the general rule for gender. See **7**.

98.   VOCABULARY.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year.

auctor, -ōris, *m.*, author.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.

virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, virtue, valor, excellence.

paucī, -ae, -a, (*pl.*) few.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wish, desire.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and (to be translated before the word to which it is attached).

99.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitum virtūte et bonō ducis cōnsiliō hostēs superāvimus.   2. Prīmus bonī cōnsilī auctor ducis pater erat.   3. Hostēs post clādem pācem optābant.   4. Prīmō bellī annō paucās urbēs multō labōre occupāverāmus. 5. Bellī temporibus bonās lēgēs hominēs nōn faciunt. 6. Ante fīnem bellī ducēs mīlitēsque pācem optābant. 7. Nocte ad lītus iter facit et statim dē proeliō cōnsulī nūntiat.   8. Cōnsul hostium cōpiās superābit et in montēs fugābit.   9. Ubi cum Graecīs pūgnābant Rōmānī? 10. Multīs bellīs in Graeciā et in Ītaliā cum Graecīs Rōmānī pūgnābant.   11. Malī hominēs malōrum cōnsiliōrum auctōrēs sunt.

II. 1. Many (desire) peace, few desire war.   2. The authors of the war were praising the valor of the soldiers.

3. In times of peace nations (races) prepare (for) war.
4. The guards at (of) the gate gave the signal to the soldiers. 5. The men of Britain have always praised the laws of the Romans. 6. Broad rivers carry large ships to the sea. 7. Physical (of the body) labor is not always pleasant to the farmer's son. 8. Men often procure food with great toil. 9. After many hours of toil, night is grateful to men and animals. 10. The mother always desires to please (her) little daughter.

———••o°o°o••———

CHAPTER XVIII.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Passive; Ablative of Agent.

100.   PARADIGM.

ācer, *sharp.*   Stem ācri-

SINGULAR.

	Masculine	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	ācer	ācrĭs	ācre
G.	ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĭs
D., Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre

PLURAL.

	Masculine	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrĭa
G.	ācrĭum	ācrĭum	ācrĭum
D., Ab.	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus
Ac.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrĭa

1. These are called adjectives of three terminations, because in the nominative singular there is a different form for each gender.[1]

2. What change in the stem is seen in the nominative?

3. Decline together **mīles ācer, domina ācris.**

101. Learn the conjugation of the present indicative passive of **amō** (p. 232). Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory. Like **amō** conjugate the present indicative passive of **vocō, laudō, dēlectō, vulnerō.**

102.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Nauta Lūciam amat,** *the sailor loves Lucy.*
2. **Lūcia ā nautā amātur,** *Lucy is loved by the sailor.*
3. **Horātius ab amīcō amātur,** *Horace is loved by his friend.*

Observe that the first and second sentences have the same meaning, but that the verb of the first is in the active voice, and the verb of the second in the passive.

Observe that the agent — that is, the person who does the act — is expressed in the first by the nominative case, and in the second by the ablative with *ā*, and in the third by the ablative with *ab*.

103. RULE. — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

104.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Portāmur, dēlectāmur.   2. Nūntiātur, occupātur.   3. Vulnerātur ā mīlite.   4. Fugantur ā cōnsule.

---

[1] To this class belong only a few stems in *-ri*. These are all (except **celer**) declined like **ācer.**

5. Gladiō vulnerātur. 6. Portāmur in scholam. 7. Vo-
cāmur ex hortō. 8. Dēlectāris urbe, laudāris ab amīcīs.

II. 1. They are carried, they are put to flight. 2. You
(sing.) are called by name. 3. You (pl.) are called by
the teacher. 4. The town is seized by the general.
5. He is wounded with a sword. 6. They are overcome
by the enemy. 7. We are praised by (our) friends. 8. I
am carried by (my) horse.

105.   VOCABULARY.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, disaster, calamity.

fortitūdō, -inis, -*f.*, courage, bravery.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* loca, locō-rum, *n.*), place.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, risk.

voluntās,-tātis,*f.*,will, goodwill.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, active.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, give.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep, preserve, save.

106.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Paucīs hominibus multae virtūtēs sunt. 2. Mī-
litum virtūs fortitūdō,[1] ducum bonum cōnsilium est.
3. Pater ā fīliō ē mortis perīculō servātur. 4. Amīcōrum
bonā voluntāte saepe ē calamitāte servantur hominēs.
5. Ācrēs mīlitēs multīs vulneribus vulnerantur. 6. Num
pācem lēgēsque Britanniae incolīs dedistis? 7. Nōn
pācem, bellum calamitātēsque dedimus. 8. In montibus
sunt multa et pulchra loca. 9. Ā patribus mātribusque
bona cōnsilia puerīs puellīsque dantur. 10. Nocte ā duce
sīgnum mīlitibus datur et urbs hostium ab equitibus occu-
pātur. 11. Post labōrem hortōrum et silvārum umbrae

---

[1] See **26** and **27.**

optantur. 12. Māgnae calamitātis auctor Rōmānīs fuit
Pyrrhus. 13. Bonōrum hominum virtūtēs ā malīs saepe
laudantur.

II. 1. In free states the will of the people is law.
2. Roman soldiers often save their standards at (with)
the risk of death. 3. The standards are often saved by
Roman soldiers at the risk of death. 4. Men always
praise the courage and valor of the Greeks. 5. The
courage and valor of the Greeks are praised by many.
6. A place is being prepared near the river for a new
city. 7. Before the first hour the troops will seize the
city. 8. Within a short time the teacher was living with
(his) son. 9. The guards of the gate are put to flight by
the active horsemen.

107. READING LESSON.

HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE.

Porsenna (*Porsenna*), rēx Tuscōrum (*of the Etruscans*),
cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat (*was waging*) et ad urbem
multīs cum mīlitibus appropinquābat (*was approaching*).
Horātius, vir Rōmānus, cum duōbus (*two*) sociīs ante
pontem (*bridge*) quī (*which*) erat in flūmine Tiberī (*Tiber*)
multōs Tuscōs necāvit et fortitūdine suā (*his*) patriam ē
māgnō perīculō servāvit.

NAVIS.

CHAPTER XIX.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.

*First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Passive;
Ablative of Cause.*

108.   PARADIGM.

brevis, *short.*   Stem **brevi-**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.		brevis	breve		brevēs	brevia
G.		brevis			brevium	
D.,Ab.		brevī			brevibus	
Ac.		brevem	breve		brevēs (-īs)	brevia

109. Learn the conjugation of the imperfect indicative passive of **amō**. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

110.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Servābar, servābāmur. 2. Nūntiābātur, vocābantur. 3. Portābam, portābor. 4. Hostēs fugābāmus, ab hostibus fugābāmur. 5. Portābātur, portātur. 6. Parābat, parābantur. 7. Vulnerābātur, necābantur. 8. Dabat, dabit, datur.

II. 1. I was calling, thou wast called. 2. He was loved by (his) sister. 3. He was delighted with the city. 4. He was wishing to fight. 5. We were reporting, he was reported. 6. We were carrying, they were carried. 7. In the night the city was being seized. 8. We were saved by friends.

111.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCE.

1. **Servī fide ā dominō laudantur,** *the slaves are praised by their master for (because of) their fidelity.*
2. **Mīlitēs dēfessī itinere erant,** *the soldiers were weary with (on account of) their march.*

Observe that *fide* shows the cause of the praising, and *itinere* the cause of the weariness, and that they are in the ablative case.

112. RULE. — *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

113.   VOCABULARY.

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.,* influence, authority.

facinus, facinoris, *n.,* deed, crime.

frāter, -tris, *m.,* brother.

iuvenis, -is, *m.,* youth, young man.

mulier, mulieris, *f.,* woman.

brevis, -e, short.

fortis, -e, brave.

gravis, -e, heavy, serious.

omnis, -e, all.

apud, *prep. (with acc.),* near, among, with.

114.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ācer iuvenis longō itinere dēfessus erat. 2. Fortis iuvenis rēgem necābat; māgnum erat iuvenis facinus. 3. Post gravēs bellī calamitātēs et labōrēs pāx ab omnibus optābātur. 4. Frātris auctōritās apud rēgem māgna erat. 5. Multae mulierēs brevī tempore necābantur. 6. Vītae tempus breve est; post paucōs annōs mors omnēs superat. 7. Cōnsiliō et voluntāte amīcōrum ē perīculō servābāmur. 8. Gravia vulnera portae cūstōdibus ab ācribus hostibus dabantur. 9. Ā prīmā hōrā ad noctem māgnā virtūte pūgnābātur (*it was,* etc.).

10. Equitum auxiliō ācrēs hostēs ā fortibus mīlitibus superābantur.   11. Fortitūdine mīlitum locus servābātur.

II. 1. A place was being prepared for the sick soldiers.   2. There were few women in the new city. 3. The new city was called by the name of the leader. 4. Laws were being given to the people by the new king. 5. The mother was delighted with the virtue and influence of (her) son.   6. The king is delighted with the valor of (his) young brother (his brother a young man). 7. In a short time the young man will be king.   8. The king is put to flight by the brave deed of the young man. 9. We all desire to preserve the good-will of friends and associates.   10. The father was being kept from danger by the son.

———∘o⟡o∘———

CHAPTER XX.

Adjectives of One Termination.[1]

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Passive; Ablative of Specification.

115.   PARADIGMS.

	vēlōx, *swift.*			potēns, *powerful.*		
Stem	vēlōc-			potent-		
	SINGULAR.			**SINGULAR.**		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.		vēlōx			potēns	
G.		vēlōcis			potentis	
D.		vēlōcī			potentī	
Ac.	vēlōcem		vēlōx	potentem		potēns
Ab.		vēlōcī (-e)			potentī (-e)	

---

[1] This class includes all consonant stems except the comparatives.

PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V. vēlōcēs		vēlōcia	potentēs		potentia
G.	vēlōcium			potentium	
D., Ab.	vēlōcibus	.		potentibus	
Ac. vēlōcēs (-īs)		vēlōcia	potentēs (-īs)		potentia

1. What nouns do these adjectives resemble in their declension?

2. Why are they called adjectives of one termination?

3. Decline together **eques vēlōx, vēlōx equus, rēx potēns, urbs potēns.**

116. Learn the conjugation of the future indicative passive of **amō.** Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

117.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Servābō, servābor.   2. Nūntiābātur, nūntiābitur. 3. Vocāberis, pūgnābāmus.   4. Locus ā victōre occupā- bitur.   5. Fābulae nārrābuntur, nārrābantur.   6. Nūnti- āberis, fugābiminī.   7. Dōnum dabātur, portābitur.   8. Dē- lectāberis, laudābāminī, amāminī.

II. 1. I shall be overcome, we shall be overcome. 2. He was being carried, he will be carried.   3. They will be called, we shall be praised.   4. I was put to flight, he was killed.   5. I shall be reported, you (pl.) will be preserved.   6. He is being carried, they will be carried.   7. I am praised, I was praised, I shall be praised. 8. He is called, he was called, he will be called.

118.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Graecī Persās virtūte superābant,** *the Greeks surpassed the Persians in valor.*

2. **Nōmine fuit rēx,** *he was king in name.*
3. **Nūntius vēlōx est pedibus,** *the messenger is swift of foot.*

Observe that *virtūte* is used with *superābant* and defines its application; so also *nōmine* defines the application of *rēx,* and *pedibus* that of *vēlōx.* The ablative thus used answers the question *in what respect,* and is called the *ablative of specification.*

119. RULE. — *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*

120. VOCABULARY.

arma, -ōrum, *n., pl.,* arms.
cīvis, -is, *m.,* (like **īgnis**) citizen.
dōnum, -ī, *n.,* gift.,
genus, -eris, *n.,* race, kind, sort.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.,* lieutenant, ambassador.

lūdus, -ī, *m.,* sport, game.
potestās, -tātis, *f.,* power.
potēns, -entis, powerful.
prūdēns, -entis, prudent.
vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.

121. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fābricius, fortis et prūdēns Rōmānōrum dux, ā cīvibus amātur. 2. Pyrrhus servum cum epistulā et dōnīs ad Fābricium mittit. 3. Fābricī probitās ab omnibus laudābitur. 4. Longō itinere dēfessī iuvenēs gravia arma nōn portābunt. 5. Lēgātī fortitūdō perīculō mortis nōn superābitur. 6. Rōmānī māgnam potestātem armīs parābant, cōnsiliīs servābant. 7. Ā Rōmānīs, potentibus gentium dominīs, lēgēs hominibus dabantur. 8. Novum lūdī genus ā cīvibus parābitur. 9. Brevī tempore omnēs vēlōcibus iuvenis pedibus superābuntur. 10. Apud Britanniae gentēs mulierēs saepe virōs auctōritāte superābant. 11. Fortēs cīvēs lapidibus ex urbe hostēs fugāvērunt. 12. Nūntius dē clāde hostium et dē ducis vulneribus

nārrāvit.   13. Māgnum facinus ab ācrī iuvene parātur. 14. Rēgem necābit et omnem potestātem occupābit.

II. 1. The leader of the soldiers was small in stature (body), but great in courage. 2. After a short time the Romans sent prudent men (as) ambassadors to Pyrrhus. 3. The ambassador Fabricius was great in honesty. 4. Pyrrhus desired to please Fabricius with a gift of money. 5. Pyrrhus by (force of) arms had seized a large part of Italy. 6. All the states of Italy were in the power of Pyrrhus. 7. The disaster to (of) the troops will be immediately reported to the consul by a swift messenger. 8. O brave Horatius, you were not surpassed in valor by Roman citizens. 9. The young man is swift of foot (in feet); he will not be surpassed by (his) associates. 10. The young man surpasses (his) associates in all kinds of games. 11. Roman consuls used to amuse (delight) the people with all kinds of games.

122.   READING LESSON.

THE ROMAN POWER.

Rōmānī armīs suīs (*their*) māgnam potestātem parāvērunt, lēgibus bonīs servāvērunt. Multās gentēs bellō superāvērunt, sed ex hostibus amīcōs fēcērunt (*they made*). In bellō fortēs, in pāce prūdentēs, omnium gentium diū (*a long time*) dominī erant. Posteā (*afterward*), cum (*when*) minus (*less*) fortēs et prūdentēs factī essent (*they had become*), ā barbarīs (*barbarians*) superābantur. Postrēmō (*at last*) urbem ipsam (*itself*) barbarī occupāvērunt.

CICERO.

CHAPTER XXI.

First Conjugation.

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative
Passive; Descriptive Ablative.*

123. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **amō.**

1. These tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participal **amātus, -a, -um.** They are, therefore, called *compound tenses.*

2. The participle **amātus, -a, -um,** is declined like **bonus, -a, -um,** and agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Like **amō,** conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **laudō, vocō,** and **vulnerō.**

124.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Servātus est, servātī sumus.   2. Fugātī erātis, vocāta eris.   3. Nūntiātī sunt, portātae eritis.   4. Necātī estis, nūntiātum erat.   5. Vulnerātī erāmus, necātī erant. 6. Dēlectātae erunt, dēlectāta erit.   7. Necātus est, vulnerātus erās, servāta erō.   8. Steterat, datum erat, nārrātum est.

II. 1. He had been called, they have been put to flight. 2. I have been pleased, we have been saved.   3. We have fought, we have been wounded.   4. The girls have been called, they had been saved.   5. The standard has been seized, the city has been seized.   6. The girl had been

praised, the boy will have been praised. 7. The arms were seized, the city has been saved. 8. The game had been prepared, the games will have been prepared.

125. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Lūcia est puella māgnā superbiā,** *Lucy is a girl of great pride.*
2. **Horātius erat māgnā virtūte,** *Horace was (a man) of great valor.*
3. **Virōs māgnā fortitūdine laudāmus,** *we praise men of great bravery.*

Observe that *māgnā superbiā* modifies *puella,* that *māgnā virtūte* modifies *Horātius,* and that *māgnā fortitūdine* modifies *virōs.* Observe, also, that these ablatives express a quality of the substantives which they modify. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of quality,* or the *descriptive ablative.*

The ablative alone cannot be used to express quality, but must have an adjective in agreement with it, or a limiting genitive.

126. RULE. — *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

127. VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.,* friendship.

comes, -itis, *m. and f.,* companion.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.,* number, great number.

mūrus, -ī, *m.,* wall.

turris, -is, *f.* (like **īgnis,** but *acc. sing.* always **turrim**), tower, turret.

vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, *f.,* force; *pl.* **vīrēs, vīrium,** etc., strength.

ingēns, -tis, huge, vast.

īnsīgnis, -e, remarkable.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, question.

I. 1. Nūntius ā lēgātō dē hostium multitūdine inter-
rogābātur. 2. Ā duce hostium sīgnum datum est.
3. Statim māgnā vī et īnsīgnī fortitūdine mūrum et
turrim occupāvērunt. 4. Ā prīmā ad tertiam hōram
pūgnātum est. 5. Brevī tempore fortēs mīlitēs superātī
erant; multī vulneribus necātī erant. 6. Prūdentēs virī
mulieribus bonī comitēs sunt. 7. Virōrum amīcitiā saepe
ē gravibus perīculīs servantur. 8. Apud bonōs hominēs
ingēns est vīs amīcitiae. 9. Amīcōrum potestāte bona
dōna hominibus parantur; hostium arma et omnia perī-
culōrum genera superantur. 10. Nūntius in itinere ab
hoste vēlōcī vulnerātus est. 11. Homō māgnā apud
Graecōs auctōritāte erat, ingentī corpore et īnsīgnī virtūte.
12. Ācrī iuvenī, multīs in proeliīs victōrī, fīlia ā patre data
erit. 13. Helenae frātrēs virī erant māgnā fortitūdine.

II. 1. The Greeks were a people powerful in war and
remarkable in times of peace. 2. The cities of Greece
were often preserved from the enemy by walls and towers.
3. A multitude of men lived in the cities of Greece.
4. Among the Greeks the victors in the games were
always praised. 5. Boy, do you ask about the leader of
the Greeks and (his) prudent companion and (his) wars
with many races? 6. Homer has told about the kings
of Greece, the multitude of (their) ships and force of
(their) arms, and (their) remarkable deeds. 7. He has
told about the brothers of Helen, men of great valor and
influence. 8. The tower was seized by a few brave men.
9. The fight had continued (it had been fought) from the
third hour till[1] night. 10. The place is remarkable for
the defeat[2] of the forces of Pyrrhus.

---

[1] Use ad.   [2] See 112.

CHAPTER XXII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.

129. Adjectives have in Latin as in English three degrees of comparison,— the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Comparison may be regular or irregular.

130.   REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cărus (stem căro-), *dear.*	cărior, *dearer.*	cărissimus, *dearest.*
brevis (stem brevi-), *short.*	brevior, *shorter.*	brevissimus, *shortest.*
vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), *swift.*	vēlōcior, *swifter.*	vēlōcissimus, *swiftest.*
potēns (stem potent-), *powerful.*	potentior, *more powerful.*	potentissimus *most powerful.*

Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem-vowel, if there is one, and adding -ior, and the superlative likewise by adding -issimus.[1]

Compare altus, longus, lātus, laetus, grātus, fortis, gravis.

---

[1] Some adjectives are not compared by adding terminations, but by using **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most;* as, **idōneus**, *suitable;* **magis idōneus**, *more suitable;* **māximē idōneus**, *most suitable.*

Declension of Comparatives.

131. PARADIGM.

cārior, *dearer.*   Stem cārior.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	cārior		cārius	cāriōrēs		cāriōra
G.		cāriōris			cāriōrum	
D.		cāriōrī			cāriōribus	
Ac.	cāriōrem		cārius	cāriōrēs (-īs)		cāriōra
Ab.		cāriōre *or* -ī			cāriōribus	

1. All comparatives are declined like cārior.
2. All superlatives are declined like bonus.
3. The comparative must sometimes be translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very*.

> **Bellum est longius**, *the war is rather long.*
> **Bellum est longissimum**, *the war is very long.*

132. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rēx est potentior quam cōnsul**, *a king is more powerful than a consul.*
2. **Rēx est potentior cōnsule**, *a king is more powerful than a consul.*

In what case is *cōnsul?* Why?
Observe that the sentences have the same meaning, and that the ablative *cōnsule* is used instead of *quam cōnsul.*

133. RULE.— *The comparative is followed by the ablative when* **quam** *(than) is omitted.*

This ablative can be used only instead of a nominative or an accusative.

134. VOCABULARY.

Cyclōps, -is, *m.*, Cyclops.

nēmō, -inis, *m.*, nobody, no one. (Not used in the *gen.* and *abl.*)

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, Polyphemus.

Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ulysses.

altus, -a, -um, high, deep.

cārus, -a, -um, dear.

cēterus, -a, -um, the rest of.

clārus, -a, -um, clear, illustrious, famous.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

quam, *adv.*, than.

135. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Homērus fuit poēta clārissimus Graecōrum. 2. Homērus clārior fuit quam cēterī Graecī poētae. 3. Homērus dē Cyclōpibus ingentium hominum gente nārrāvit. 4. Ingentēs Cyclōpēs temporibus Ulixis in īnsulā Siciliā habitābant. 5. Cyclōpēs corporis vī cēterōs hominēs superābant. 6. Prūdentior comitibus Ulixēs Polyphēmō dōnum dedit. 7. Cōnsilium Ulixis prūdentissimum erat et comitibus ūtilissimum. 8. Nēmō fuit Pyrrhō grātior quam Fābricius lēgātus. 9. Rōmānī erant populus fortissimus et armīs potentissimus. 10. Turrēs hostium mūrīs oppidī altiōrēs fuērunt. 11. Patria multīs cīvibus cārior est quam vīta. 12. Mare est altius flūminibus altissimīs.

I. 1. No one was more prudent than Ulysses. 2. Ulysses was more prudent than the rest of the Greeks. 3. The Cyclops, Polyphemus, questioned the brave Ulysses about (his) native land. 4. The Cyclopes were of remarkable physical strength (force of the body). 5. The illustrious Ulysses was very dear to (his) companions. 6. The friendship of a good man is very useful. 7. The high wall of the city will preserve the citizens. 8. The Romans were excelled in number by the Greeks. 9. The

swift are not always victors in the games. 10. A new kind of gift was given by Ulysses to the Cyclops.

136. READING LESSON.

ACHILLES AND ULYSSES.

Nēmō Graecōrum fortior erat quam Achillēs (*Achilles*), nēmō prūdentior quam Ulixēs. Achillēs vī et armīs hostēs fugābat, Ulixēs cōnsiliō victōriam Graecīs parābat. Achillēs in bellō ā Paride (*Paris*) sagittā (*arrow*) necātus est; Ulixēs post multōs annōs in patriam revēnit (*came back*).

———•◦○◉○◦•———

CHAPTER XXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

Partitive Genitive.

137. ADJECTIVES IN -*er*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1. miser (stem misero-), *wretched.*	miserior, -ius, *more wretched.*	miserrimus,-a,-um, *most wretched.*
2. ācer (stem acri-), *sharp.*	ācrior, -ius, *sharper.*	ācerrimus, -a, -um, *sharpest.*

Observe that the comparative of adjectives in -*er* is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding to the nominative singular masculine of the positive, -*rimus, -a, -um.*

Compare līber, niger, pulcher.

138. Six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem minus the stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy.*	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, *difficult.*	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, *like.*	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, *unlike.*	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
gracilis, *slender.*	gracilior.	gracillimus.
humilis, *low.*	humilior.	humillimus.

139.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Graecōrum fortissimus erat Achillēs,** *the bravest of the Greeks was Achilles.*
2. **Decem equitum necātī sunt,** *ten of the horsemen were killed.*
3. **Multī mīlitum vulnerātī erant,** *many of the soldiers had been wounded.*

Observe that each word limited by the genitive in the examples denotes a part of the whole denoted by the genitive.

140. RULE. — *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

141.   VOCABULARY.

Achillēs, -is, *m.,* Achilles.
Agamemnōn, -onis, Agamemnon.
Athēnae, -ārum, *f.,* Athens.
Menelāus, -ī, *m.,* Menelaus.
Periclēs, -is, *m.,* Pericles.

Rōma, -ae, *f.,* Rome.
facilis, -e, easy.
difficilis, -e, difficult, hard.
similis, -e, similar, like.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.
celeber, -bris, -bre, celebrated.

142.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Māgna pars itineris facillima fuit, parva pars difficillima. 2. Multī librī sunt faciliōrēs, paucī difficillimī.

3. Iuvenis est patrī similis. 4. Asinus est equō dissimil-
limus. 5. Asinī vīta longior est quam equī. 6. Mūrī
urbis erant altī, turrēs altiōrēs. 7. Puer dē īnsīgnī nāvium
calamitāte magistrum interrogāvit. 8. Rōma celebrior
fuit quam cēterae omnēs urbēs Ītaliae. 9. Polyphēmus
cēterīs Cyclōpibus corpore erat ingentior. 10. Nēmō
Graecōrum fortior fuit quam Achillēs, nēmō prūdentior
quam Ulixēs. 11. Nōmen Achillis clārius est quam
nōmen Menelāī, frātris Agamemnonis. 12. Helena, uxor
Menelāī, pulcherrima fēminārum vocāta est. 13. Athēnae
erant temporibus Periclis urbs pulcherrima et celeberrima.
14. Facilius est potestātem quam virtūtem parāre.

II. 1. Rome was the most celebrated city of Italy.
2. (It) is difficult to procure a great number of friends.
3. Achilles and Ulysses were very unlike. 4. Achilles
was the bravest of the Greeks, Ulysses the most prudent.
5. The life of men is easy; after a short time of toil
long peace is prepared. 6. The story about Ulysses and
Polyphemus is very easy. 7. The most illustrious of
the Greeks were Agamemnon, Achilles (and) Ulysses.
8. The maiden is very like (her) mother. 9. No one of
the other poets is more illustrious than Homer.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Irregular Comparison.

Ablative of Difference.

143. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, *outward.*	exterior, *outer* or *more outward.*	extrēmus *and* extimus, *outermost* or *last.*
inferus, *low.*	inferior, *lower.*	infimus *and* īmus, *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	posterior, *later.*	postrēmus *and* postumus, *last.*
superus, *upper.*	superior, *higher, superior.*	suprēmus *and* summus, *top of, highest.*

These adjectives are used mainly in the comparative and superlative.

144. The following are irregular throughout: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, *good.*	melior, melius, *better.*	optimus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pēior, pēius, *worse.*	pessimus, *worst.*
mǎgnus, *great.*	mǎior, mǎius, *greater.*	mǎximus, *greatest.*
multus, *much.*	——, plūs,[1] *more.*	plūrimus, *most.*
multī, *many.*	plūrēs, plūra, *more.*	plūrimī, *most.*
parvus, *small.*	minor, minus, *smaller.*	minimus, *smallest.*
senex, *old.*	senior (mǎior nātū), *older, elder.*	mǎximus nātū, *oldest, eldest.*
iuvenis, *young.*	iūnior (minor nātū), *younger.*	minimus nātū, *youngest.*

[1] The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

145. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are apparently formed from adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō (prep., *before*).	prior, *former.*	prīmus, *first.*
prope (adv., *near*).	propior, *nearer.*	proximus, *nearest.*

146.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Pater capite māior est quam fīlius,** *the father is a head taller* (*larger by a head*) *than the son.*
2. **Horātius decem annīs senior est quam frāter,** *Horace is ten years older* (*older by ten years*) *than his brother.*
3. **Sīgnum decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus,** *the standard is ten feet higher* (*higher by ten feet*) *than the wall.*

An ablative like *capite, annīs,* or *pedibus,* with comparatives and words of comparison, showing how much one thing differs from another, is called an *ablative of the degree of difference.*

147. RULE. — *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

148.   VOCABULARY.

iuvenis, -is, young; as *noun,* young man.

senex, senis (used only in *m.*), old; as *noun,* old man.

nātū, *m.* (*abl. of* **nātus**), in age.

īnferus, -a, -um, low.

superus, -a, -um, high.

prior, -ius, former.

propior, -ius, nearer.

149.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Māior pars librī est facilis, parva pars difficilior. 2. Novī librī nōn semper sunt optimī. 3. Propior puerōrum senior est et patrī similior. 4. In priōre epistulā dē itinere et comitibus Lūcia nārrāverat; in

proximā[1] dē Athēnīs urbe celebrī nārrābit. 5. Cōpiae nocte superiōre[2] partem montis occupāverant. 6. Facile erat īnferiōrem oppidī partem occupāre. 7. Rīpa est paucīs pedibus altior quam flūminis aqua. 8. Rōma omnium urbium Ītaliae celeberrima erat. 9. Māxima nātū sorōrum Horātī superiōre tempore in Graeciā habitāverat. 10. Plūrimae īnsulae maris erant in potes- tāte Graecōrum. 11. Menelāus paucīs annīs iūnior erat Agamemnone frātre. 12. Agamemnōn auctōritāte erat superior, Achillēs virtūte. 13. Summus mōns ab hostium cōpiīs occupātus erat.

II. 1. Many books are very easy, many very difficult. 2. Rome was much larger than Athens, the most cele- brated city of Greece. 3. Achilles was more illustrious than the other leaders of the Greeks. 4. The old man was standing on the top of the wall. 5. No one is nearer and dearer to the young man than (his) brother. 6. The general's plan was to seize the nearest city of the enemy. 7. In the former battle the horsemen of the enemy had been put to flight. 8. The friendship of prudent old men is very useful to young men.

150.   READING LESSON.

DEATH AND THE OLD MAN.

·Pauper (*poor*) senex māgnum et gravem fascem (*fagot*) portābat. Labōre dēfessus mortem vocāvit. Mors statim adveniēns (*coming up*) quid vellet (*he wished*) interrogāvit. " Fascem," respondit (*replied*) senex, " tolle (*lift*), obsecrō (*I beg*)." Saepe hominēs miserī mortem absentem (*absent*) vocant, praesentem (*present*) timent (*fear*).

---

[1] Nearest (to come), *i.e.* next.
[2] When used of time **superior** means earlier, former.

CHAPTER XXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

151.   ADJECTIVES.   ADVERBS.

1. miser (stem misero-), *wretched.*   miserē, *wretchedly.*
    laetus (stem laeto-), *glad.*   laetē, *gladly.*

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding ē.[1]

Form adverbs from **grātus, lātus, pulcher.**

2. ācer (stem ācri-) *sharp.*   ācriter, *sharply.*
    vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), *swift.*   vēlōciter, *swiftly.*
    potēns (stem potent-), *powerful.*   potenter, *powerfully.*

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter* or *-iter*. Stems ending in *nt* drop *t* before the addition.

3. Sometimes the neuter accusative and sometimes the ablative of the adjective is used as an adverb; as, **multum,** *much;* **facile,** *easily;* **prīmō,** *first.*

152.   COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
laetē, *gladly.*	laetius.	laetissime.
facile, *easily.*	facilius.	facillime.
ācriter, *sharply.*	ācrius.	ācerrime.

Observe that in the comparative the adverb is the same as the neuter of the adjective, and that the superlative of

---

[1] The adverbs from **bonus** and **malus** are formed irregularly,— **benĕ, malĕ.**

the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective regularly. See **151**. 1.

153.   VOCABULARY.

Hector, -oris, *m.*, Hector.
meus, -a, -um, my, mine.
Patroclus, -ī, *m.*, Patroclus.
Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan.
decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.
ācriter, *adv.*, sharply.

diū, *adv.*, long, a long time.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
magis, *adv.*, more.
māximē, *adv.*, most, very much.
atque (āc), *conj.*, and.

154.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōnne Polyphēmus cēterīs hominibus similis erat? 2. Polyphēmus ingentior erat corpore quam cēterī hominēs. 3. Patroclus armīs Achillis amīcī fortiter pūgnāvit. 4. Ab Hectore fortissimō Trōiānōrum Patroclus necātus est. 5. Periclēs clārissimus Athēnārum cīvis, māximē laudātur. 6. Ad īmum montem diū atque ācriter pūgnātum[1] est. 7. Lēgātus decem annīs minor nātū est duce. 8. Īnferiōrem oppidī partem facile occupāverat. 9. Cōpiae fortiter pūgnāvērunt, sed multitūdine hostium superātae sunt. 10. Superiōre annō pauca loca marī proxima ā Rōmānīs occupāta erant. 11. Minima nātū meārum sorōrum in urbe habitāre optat. 12. Meae sorōrēs frātribus meīs dissimillimae sunt. 13. Mātrēsne fīliōs magis quam fīliās amant?

II. 1. The Trojans fought long and sharply with the Greeks. 2. In a former battle Patroclus had been killed by Hector. 3. Patroclus was older than (his) friend Achilles. 4. Hector fought very bravely, but was killed

---

[1] It was fought, *i.e.* the battle went on.

by Achilles. 5. Hector's father, king of the Trojans, loved (his) son very much. 6. After the death of Hector, Achilles gave (his) body to the old man. 7. It is more difficult to keep than to procure friends. 8. The most celebrated cities of the Greeks and Romans were smaller than many cities of my country. 9. The best men have always desired virtue more than pleasure. 10. In a very short time the town was seized by the Romans.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Fourth or *u*-Declension.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

155. PARADIGMS.

exercitus, *m.*, army.　　　　**cornū**, *n.*, *horn.*
Stem **exercitu-**　　　　Stem **cornu-**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī (ū)	exercitĭbus	cornū	cornĭbus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitā	exercitĭbus	cornū	cornĭbus

1. The stems of the fourth declension end in -*u*.
2. To find the stem, drop *um* of the genitive plural.
3. Make a table of terminations for both nouns.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in -*us* are almost all masculine; in -*ū*, neuter.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

156. Learn the principal parts and present indicative active of **habeō** (p. 235).

1. How do the terminations of the present tense differ from those of **amō**?

2. What is the present stem? See **59. 1.**

3. Verbs of the second conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ēre* of the present infinitive active.

157.   VOCABULARY.

cɔrnū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of an army).

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.

lībertās, -ātis, *f.*, liberty.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, port, harbor.

dexter, -tra, -trum, right.

noster, -tra, -trum, our.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, owe, ought.

habeō, -ēre, -habuī, habitus, have, hold.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain.

timeō, -ēre, timuī (*no perf. part.*), fear.

vīdeō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see.

Domus has also some forms of the second declension. The usual ablative singular is **domō.** See also **251, 252.**

158.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Patriam magis quam vītam amāre dēbēmus. 2. Multī et clārī virī domōs in nostrā urbe habent. 3. Optāmus omnium gentium amīcitiam in[1] omne tempus servāre. 4. Sed lībertātem patriae servāre magis optāmus. 5. Multōs portūs, multās nāvēs, multōs et fortēs

---

[1] *For.* This use of **in** occurs frequently with **tempus** and some other words.

A Roman House at Pompeii.

nautās habēmus. 6. Nostrī validī mīlitēs fortiter atque ācriter pūgnant. 7. Fortius pūgnant quod līberī sunt. 8. Nāvēs[1] longās in nostrō portū cottīdiē vidēmus. 9. Cūr longae nāvēs diū in portū manent? 10. Hostium nāvēs longae māgnā clāde superātae sunt. 11. Dextrum exercitūs cornū superiōrem locum facile occupāvit. 12. Senēs perīcula itineris timent, sed in urbe diūtius manēre nōn dēbent. 13. Priōre tempore in celebrī urbe Britanniae habitābāmus.

II. 1. We ought to have a larger and better army than our enemies. 2. At night the boys fear to remain in the woods. 3. Old men often fear death more than young men. 4. Free men fight more bravely and sharply than slaves. 5. Beasts often see better at night than men. 6. The horsemen were on the right wing. 7. Many horsemen of the enemy were killed. 8. More of the enemy were killed than of our soldiers.

59. READING LESSON.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME.

Rōmulus (*Romulus*) cum Remō (*Remus*) frātre urbem Rōmam in rīpā flūminis Tiberis (*the Tiber*) condidit (*founded*). Novam urbem parvō mūrō Rōmulus circumdedit (*surrounded*). Remus parvum Rōmulī mūrum trānsiluit (*jumped over*); quō (*at which*) īrātus (*angry*) Rōmulus frātrem necāvit. Ita (*so*) Rōmulus prīmus Rōmae rēx erat. Post Rōmulum sex (*six*) rēgēs erant. Post septem (*seven*) rēgēs cōnsulibus summa in cīvitāte potestās atque auctōritās ā cīvibus data est.

---

[1] The Romans called ships of war long ships.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Dative with Adjectives.

160. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of habeō.

Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of amō, and observe that they differ only in the final vowel of the stem.

161. Sentences previously used in exercises : —

Cibus servō grātus est.

Cōnsilium Ulixis erat comitibus ūtilissimum.

Patria multīs cīvibus cārior est quam vīta.

Asinus est equō dissimilis.

Observe that in each of these sentences the dative is dependent upon an adjective, and shows to what the quality denoted by the adjective applies.

162. RULE. — *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

These are chiefly adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, and their opposites.

163.   VOCABULARY.

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, a camp.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band.

sinister, -tra, trum, left.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, station.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take by storm, storm.

moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move.

studeō, -ēre, -uī (no *perf. part.*), be eager (*cf.* study).

neque, *conj.*, and not.

neque... neque, neither... nor.

164. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Trōiānī iuvenēs Achillis impetūs māximē timē-bant. 2. Potentī manū dextrā Hectorem fortissimum Trōiānōrum iuvenum necāvit. 3. Dēbēmus hodiē in urbe manēre. 4. Nōnne virōs clārōs et loca celebria et portum māgnum vidēre optātis? 5. Castra sunt urbī proxima et in nostrīs viīs saepe sunt multī mīlitēs. 6. Manēbuntne diū mīlitēs ad urbem? 7. Brevī tempore sīgna ex castrīs movēbunt. 8. Student expūgnāre hostium castra. 9. Nostrī mīlitēs domōs māximē amant neque grātum erit longum bellum. 10. Equitēs saepe in cornibus exercituum collocantur. 11. Sinistrum nostrī exercitūs cornū ab ācribus hostium equitibus fugātum est. 12. Graecī nōn facile fugātī sunt, quod neque vulnera neque mortem timēbant.

II. 1. The Trojans stationed (their) best soldiers on the right wing. 2. The Trojans moved (their) army into the city because they feared the attacks of Achilles. 3. Neither did the Greeks storm the walls of the city nor did the Trojans fight longer before the gates. 4. Hector, the brave son of the king of the Trojans, was killed by Achilles near the gate. 5. The aged (*senex*) king saw the death of (his) son from the wall. 6. Brave men ought to love liberty and not fear death. 7. Not all sons are like (their) fathers; many are worse, few better. 8. Our friends are eager to see our very beautiful house.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

165. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of **habeō**.

What is the perfect stem of **habeō**?   See **77. 1.**

166.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dēbēs, dēbēbās, dēbēbis.   2. Mānsit, vīdit, mōvērunt. 3. Collocābam, movēbam, studēbō. 4. Dēbuit, studuit, vīdit. 5. Mānserās, collocāverās, timuerās. 6. Manēmus, servāmus, movēmus. 7. Dēbētis, manēbātis, vidēbitis. 8. Movēbās, expūgnābās, vidēbis.

II. 1. I was owing, I shall have, I saw. 2. We are moving, we have moved, we shall remain. 3. You (sing.) were moving, you (sing.) remained, you (sing.) studied. 4. He had been eager, he has seen, they have feared. 5. He asked, he saw, he placed. 6. They have been eager, they were eager, they will be eager. 7. He will fear, you will remain, I shall move.

167.   VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach.
collis, -is, *m.*, hill.
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury (implying a wrong).
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, habits, manners.
Paris, -idis, *m.*, Paris.
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.

Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arm, equip.
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy.
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, expect, wait for.
propter, *prep.* (*with acc.*), on account of.

168.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lībertăs patriae cīvibus cărissima est. 2. Brevī
tempore măgnum exercitum armăvimus. 3. Lēgātus
summā vī in sinistrum hostium cornū impetum facit.
4. Dux dextrō in cornū equitēs collocăvit. 5. Cūr in
summō colle equitēs collocăverat? 6. Ad īmum collem
brevī tempore castra mōverit. 7. Graecī post decem
annōs urbem Trōiam expūgnāvērunt et dēlēvērunt.
8. Priōre tempore domum in nostrā urbe poēta habuerat.
9. Bonīs puellārum mōribus māter māximē dēlectātur.
10. Ulixēs adventum Polyphēmī exspectăre optăvit.
11. Achillēs ā Paride sagittā vulnerātus et necātus est.
12. Propter iniūriam Menelāī urbem Trōiam dēlēvērunt
Graecī.

II. 1. Our soldiers were stationed on the right wing of
the army. 2. The Greeks were eager to take Troy by
storm. 3. Will the enemy destroy our army? 4. They
will not wait for the arrival of our forces. 5. (It) was
the custom among the Trojans to arm the soldiers
with arrows. 6. The leader of the enemy has moved
(his) camp to the top of the hill. 7. Fabricius had great
influence among the citizens on account of (his) honesty.
8. Neither the city nor the harbor ought to remain in the
hands of the enemy. 9. The Trojans feared no one more
than Achilles.

169.   READING LESSON.

ALEXANDER AND BUCEPHALUS.

Alexander fīlius erat Philippī rēgis Macedonum (*Mac-
edonians*). Iuvenis erat măgnā vī corporis et măgnā
fortitūdine. Māgnus et validus equus quem (*which*) nēmō

ex omnibus rēgis equitibus vincere (*conquer*) potuerat (*had been able*) ab Alexandrō iuvene domitus (*overcome*) est. Hīc (*this*) equus, cuī (*whose*) nōmen erat Būcephalus, ab Alexandrō semper māximē amābātur. Post Philippī mortem Alexander māgnīs bellīs Graecōs et Persās (*Persians*) superāvit. In omnibus proeliīs in Bucephalō equō sedēbat (*sat, rode*).

CHAPTER XXIX.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive.

Fifth or ē-Declension.

170. Learn the present indicative passive of **habeō**.

1. Compare the endings with the corresponding endings of **amō**.

2. Like **habeō** conjugate the present indicative passive of **terreō**, **moveō**, and **videō**.

171. PARADIGM.

	diēs, *day.*		rēs, *thing.*	
	Stem diē-		Stem rē-	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

1. How are the stems of these nouns found?
2. Make a table of the terminations.

3. Diēs and rēs are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers. The others are wanting in the plural wholly or in part.

4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

172. VOCABULARY.

diēs, diēī, *m.*, day.
incendium, -ī, *n.*, burning.
Lacedaemonius, -ī, *m.*, a Lacedaemonian.
Leōnidās, -ae, *m.*, Leonidas.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
rēs, -eī, *f.*, thing, affair.
Persa, -ae, *m.*, a Persian.

Thermopylae, -ārum, *f.*, Thermopylae.
Xerxēs, -is, *m.*, Xerxes.
posterus, -a, -um, following.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold.
terreō, -ēre, -uī, territus, frighten.
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once on a time.

173. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Xerxēs dēlēre incendiō pulchrās Graeciae urbēs ōlim studēbat. 2. Leōnidās parvā cum manū Lacedaemoniōrum Thermopylās occupāvit. 3. Comitēs Leōnidae adventū Persārum nōn terrēbantur. 4. Leōnidās et parva Lacedaemoniōrum manus ā multitūdine Persārum dēlentur. 5. Clādēs Leōnidae clārior est quam multae victōriae. 6. Māgna fuit fortitūdō Leōnidae; nōmen Leōnidae semper laudābitur. 7. Victōriam Lacedaemoniōrum in memoriā semper habēbimus. 8. Montēs ā multitūdine hostium tenentur. 9. Posterō diē in castrīs mīlitēs tenēbat et impetum hostium exspectābat. 10. Graecī bellō Trōiānō multās urbēs propter praedam expūgnāvērunt. 11. Iniūriās Trōiānōrum Graecī memoriā diū tenēbant.

12. Sagittā Paris fortissimum Graecōrum vulnerāvit et necāvit.   13. Novae rēs puerōs et puellās saepe dēlectant.

II. 1. On the first day our forces make sharp attacks and seize the top of the hill.   2. On the following day the city is destroyed by burning.   3. In the night many things frighten boys and girls.   4. Once on a time (there) was a very brave king of the Lacedaemonians, Leonidas by name.   5. With a small band of soldiers he held Thermopylae.   6. They did not fear the approach of the Persians.   7. Leonidas and his little band fought very bravely, but were all killed by the Persians.   8. Bad friends destroy good manners.   9. On account of (his) wounds the general remained a long time in the city.

<div align="center">—•o⟨◦⟩o•—</div>

<div align="center">

CHAPTER XXX.

Second Conjugation : Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.

</div>

174. Learn the imperfect and future indicative passive of **habeō.**

Like **habeō** conjugate the imperfect and future indicative passive of **moveō, teneō,** and **videō.**

175. The following adjectives, regular in the plural, end in -*īus* in the genitive singular, and in -*ī* in the dative singular, except that the genitive of **alter** ends in -*ius.*

alius, *other.*	tōtus, *whole.*	alter, *the other (of two).*
nūllus, *no, none.*	ūllus, *any.*	neuter, *neither (of two).*
sōlus, *alone.*	ūnus, *one.*	ūter, *which (of two).*

176.   PARADIGMS.

alius, *other.*   ūnus, *one.*

Stem alio-, alia-   Stem ūno-, ūna-

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

Alius has *d*, not *m*, in the neuter nominative and accusative singular. For alīus (gen.), alterīus is usual.

177.   VOCABULARY.

fidēs, -eī, *f.*, confidence, fidelity.

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, good fortune.

senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator.

alius, -a, -ud,[1] other.

alter, -a, -um, other (*of two; also, one of two*).

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, assist.

valeō, -ere, valuī, valitūrus (no *perf. part.*), be strong, have influence.

178.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Post clādem Lacedaemoniōrum Xerxēs Athēnās incendiō dēlēvit.   2. Xerxēs sociōs pecūniā et aliīs rēbus iuvābat.   3. Ūnō diē tōta urbs incendiō dēlēbitur.   4. Facile est iniūriās patriae memoriā tenēre.   5. Alterī[2] ex cōnsulibus[3] senātōrēs māximam fidem habēbant, alterī

---

[1] alius . . . alius, *one . . . another;* pl., *some . . . others.*

[2] Dat., but translate with *in.*

[3] Abl. with **ex** is often equivalent to part. gen.

fidem nōn habēbant. 6. Memoria priōrum victōriārum ducem senem dēlectābat. 7. Alia castra ex summō colle vidēbuntur. 8. Calamitātibus aliōrum hominum nōn dē-lectāmur. 9. Memoriā tenēre bonōs māiōrum[1] mōrēs dēbēmus. 10. Multum fortūna in omnibus hominum rēbus valet. 11. Fortūna aliōrum plūrimīs hominibus grāta est. 12. In alterā fluvī rīpā urbs, in alterā mōns est.

II. 1. Achilles loved (his) friend Patroclus on account of (his) fidelity. 2. In one battle the whole army was put to flight and destroyed. 3. Of my brothers one is large, the other small. 4. Few men see all the virtues of others. 5. The fortune of the whole state will be destroyed by the death of one man. 6. Small things delight many men more than great things. 7. The memory of former days is grateful to old men. 8. The customs of other times were different from (unlike) ours. 9. (It) is easier to storm a city than to destroy bad habits.

179.　　READING LESSON.

NERO AND PHYLAX.

Ōlim duo (*two*) canēs, Nerō et Phylax, pulcherrimum ōs (*bone*) vīderant. Uterque (*each*) tōtum ōs pōstulat (*claims*). Neuter (*neither*) alterī ōs dare vult (*wishes*). Amīcī pūgnant. Diū et ācriter pūgnātur. Tandem (*at length*) Nerō ā Phylace fugātus est. Phylax māgnō cum gaudiō (*joy*) ad locum ubi ōs vīderant rediit (*returned*). Ōs autem (*but*) ibi (*there*) nōn erat. Alius canis prūden-tior praedam abstulerat (*had carried away*) dum (*while*) illī (*those*) duo pūgnābant.

---

[1] Elders, ancestors.

CHAPTER XXXI.

Second Conjugation : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.

180. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of habeō.

For explanation in regard to these tenses, see **123. 1** and 2.

181.   EXERCISES.

II. 1. Valēbam, terrēbar, timēbar. 2. Tentus est, territa est, vīsum est. 3. Castra mōta erant, urbs dēlēta erat. 4. Tenēbātur, tenēbitur, tenēbimur. 5. Vidēmus, vidēmur, vīsi erimus. 6. Studuērunt, territī sunt, mōtī sumus. 7. Vidēberis, vidēbāris, vīsus es. 8. Iuvābar, tenēbar, tentus sum.

II. 1. I shall remain, I shall be seen, we were seen. 2. I shall assist, I shall be assisted. 3. He will be seen, they will be seen. 4. You (pl.) were being moved, he has been moved. 5. She has been frightened, she had been frightened. 6. It was being destroyed, it had been destroyed. 7. You (pl.) are frightened, we are feared. 8. They were held, they will be seen.

182.   VOCABULARY.

animus, -ī, *m.*, spirit, mind.
imperium, -ī, *n.*, power, empire.
nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no. (The gen. and abl. sing. m.

are used for those cases of nēmō.)
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, hold.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī,
  respōnsūrus, reply.
autem, *conj.* (*post-positive*),
  but, however.

ĭbĭ, *adv.*, there.
inter, *prep.* (*with acc.*),
  among, between.

183. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Tōtĭus Ītaliae imperium ā Rōmānĭs obtinebātur.
2. Quid docuit magister ? Pulchram fābulam docuit.
3. Magister puerōs dē Xerxe et Leōnidā interrogāvit,
puerī autem nōn respondērunt. 4. Nūllĭus animus fortior
erat quam Leōnidae. 5. Inter bonōs virōs fortuna parvam
potestātem habet, fidēs multum valet. 6. Thermopylārum
nōmen omnēs semper memoriā tenēbunt; ibi ōlim paucī
Graecī cum multīs Persīs pūgnāvērunt. 7. Nūlla victōria
clārior est quam Leōnidae et Lacedaemoniōrum ad
Thermopylās clādēs. 8. Persae multīs rēbus valēbant,
pecūniā, multitūdine hominum, nāvibus, armīs. 9. Grae-
cōs autem fortēs animī iuvābant; neque perīculō neque
morte territī sunt. 10. In summō monte hostium cōpiae
ā nostrīs mīlitibus vīsae sunt. 11. Ōlim propter gravēs
Menelāī iniūriās urbs Trōia ā Graecīs incendiō dēlēta
est. 12. Posterō diē omnēs mulierēs in potestāte vic-
tōrum tenēbantur. 13. Rēx senex et omnēs senātōrēs ā
mīlitibus necātī sunt. 14. Ē rēgis fīliābus[1] altera necāta,
altera in Graeciam portāta est.

II. 1. You have asked about Leonidas and Ther-
mopylae, and I will briefly[2] reply. 2. I will tell about the
empire of the Persians and the vast forces of Xerxes.
3. Leonidas held Thermopylae with a few brave Lacedae-
monians. 4. Leonidas and the little band of Lacedaemo-

---

[1] See p. 11, n. 3.   [2] pauca, i.e. *few words.*

nians were of brave spirit. 5. But they were defeated and destroyed at Thermopylae on account of the great number of the Persians. 6. After the disaster at Thermopylae Xerxes destroyed the city of Athens by burning. 7. All Greece was frightened by the approach of Xerxes. 8. States are often taught by disaster. 9. We praise some for their fidelity, others for their courage. 10. The city was saved by the fidelity of one man. 11. Fortune will assist brave men.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Cardinal Numbers; Accusative of Extent.

184. Learn from the vocabulary the principal parts of dūcō. What is the present stem?   See **59. 1.**

Verbs of the third conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ĕre* of the present infinitive active.

185. Learn the present indicative active of dūcō (p. 238).

Notice that the stem-vowel ĕ is lost before -ō becomes ŭ before *-nt,* and ĭ before other endings.

186.   CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	6.	sex
2.	duŏ, duae, duŏ	7.	septem
3.	trēs, tria	8.	octŏ
4.	quattuor	9.	novem
5.	quīnque	10.	decem

11. ūndecim	80. octōgintā
12. duŏdecim	90. nōnāgintā
13. tredecim	100. centum.
14. quattuordecim	101. centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus
15. quīndecim	
16. sēdecim.	102. centum duŏ *or* centum et duŏ
17. septendecim	
18. duŏdēvīgintī (octōdecim)	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
20. vīgintī	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
21. vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
	600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
22. vīgintī duŏ *or* duŏ et vīgintī	700. septingentī, -ae -a
28. duŏdētrīgintā	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
29. ūndētrīgintā	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
30. trīgintā	1000. mīlle
40. quadrāgintā	2000. duŏ mīlia
50. quīnquāgintā	10,000. decem mīlia
60. sexāgintā	100,000. centum mīlia
70. septuāgintā	

187. DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.

Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except **ūnus, duŏ, trēs**, the hundreds from **ducentī** to **nōngentī** inclusive, and **mīlia**, the plural of **mīlle**. For the declension of **ūnus** see **176**.

Duŏ and trēs are thus declined: —

188. PARADIGMS.

<div align="center">duo, <i>two.</i>   trēs, <i>three.</i></div>

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*		*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	duŏ	duae	duŏ		trēs	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum		trium	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duŏ	duās	duŏ		trēs	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus	tribus	tribus

1. The hundreds, duoentī to nōngentī, are declined like the plural of **bonus.**

2. In the singular **mīlle** is generally an adjective, but the plural **mīlia** is always a noun of the neuter gender, declined like the neuter plural of **trēs**, and is followed by the partitive genitive; as, **mīlle mīlitēs,** *a thousand soldiers;* but **tria mīlia mīlitum,** *three thousand soldiers (three thousands of soldiers).*

189. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Lūcia paucōs diēs in urbe manēbat,** *Lucy remained in the city a few days.*
2. **Poēta multōs annōs in Graeciā fuerat,** *the poet had been many years in Greece.*
3. **Flūmen est pedēs trēs altum,** *the river is three feet deep.*
4. **Puer sēscentōs passūs currit,** *the boy runs six hundred paces.*

Observe that *diēs* and *annōs* denote duration of time, and are in the accusative case. They answer the question, *How long?* Observe, also, that *pedēs* and *passūs* denote extent of space, and are in the accusative. They answer the question, *How far?*

190. RULE. — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

191. VOCABULARY.

passus, -ūs, *m.,* pace; **mīlle passūs,** a thousand (double) paces, a Roman mile.

quot, *adv.,* how many?

contendō, -ere, contendī, contentus, strive, hasten.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, conduct.

For numerals see **186.**

192.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quot fīliōs habet māter nostra? Trēs fīliōs et
duās fīliās habet. 2. Quot hōrās in itinere erās? Sep-
tem et vīgintī hōrās; iter autem centum et quīnquā-
gintā mīlium passuum erat. 3. Brevī tempore magister
multās rēs docēre contendit. 4. Inter senātōrēs ūnus
omnēs aliōs probitāte superābat. 5. Multōs annōs Rōmānī
omnium gentium imperium obtinēbant. 6. Dux castra
quīnque mīlia passuum movet et in summō colle cōpiās
collocāre contendit. 7. Multōs diēs in castrīs manēbat
et hostium adventum exspectābat. 8. Quīngentōs equitēs
in cornibus collocāvit; in dextrō trecentōs, in sinistrō
ducentōs. 9. Sex mīlia passuum ad flūminis rīpam exer-
citum dūcit et ibi cum hostibus contendit. 10. Quot
haedōs ad aquam dūcitis? Nūllum haedum sed quattuor
puerōs, neque ad aquam sed in scholam dūcimus.
11. Quid respondit parvus puer? Parvus puer territus
est. Diū exspectāvimus, sed nōn respondit. 12. Quot
cīvēs habet nostra urbs? Trīgintā mīlia cīvium habet.
13. Omnēsne cīvēs bonī sunt? Nōn omnēs; aliī bonī,
aliī malī sunt. 14. Sed māior pars cīvium bonum ani-
mum habet et bonōs mōrēs in cīvitāte servāre contendit.

II. 1. How many days are there in a year? Three
hundred and sixty-five. 2. The soldier has four sons and
three daughters. 3. He leads an army of thirty thousand
men twenty-five miles in one day. 4. One leader waited
two days for the other. 5. He hastens to Thermopylae
with three hundred Spartans, and there he waits for the
coming of Xerxes. 6. (His) forces were placed between
a mountain and the sea. 7. Athens for many years held
the empire of the sea. 8. Leonidas had no (not) confi-

dence in (his) allies.[1] 9. Xerxes was strong in the num-
ber of both men and ships.   10. Other states assisted
with men and money.

193.   READING LESSON.

THE ASS'S SHADOW.

Ōlim iuvenis asinum locāvit (*hired*), in quō (*which*) vī-
gintī mīlia passuum in urbem veherētur (*he might ride*).
Aestās (*summer*) erat, et sōlis radiī (*rays*) potentissimī
erant.   Mediō (*middle*) diē iuvenis ab asinō dēscendit
(*got down*) et in ēius (*his*) umbrā recubuit (*lay down*).
Asinārius (*ass driver*) autem locum pōstulat (*demands*) et
iuvenem dēpellere (*drive away*) cōnātur (*tries*). "Quid!"
exclāmat (*exclaims*) iuvenis, "nōnne ad (*for*) tōtum iter
asinum locāvī?"   "Sāne" (*yes*), alter respondit, "asinum
locāvistī sed asinī umbram nōn locāvistī."   Dum (*while*)
illī ācriter certant (*quarrel*) asinus effugit (*runs away*).

————•o⌘o•————

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Ordinal Numerals.

194. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active
of dūcō.

---

[1] See **178. I. 5.**

Observe that the endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the first and second conjugations, while those of the future are different.

Write a table of future endings for the third conjugation, active voice, and commit to memory.

195.   ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st.	prīmus	18th.	duŏdēvīcēsimus
2d.	secundus	19th.	ūndēvīcēsimus
3d.	tertius	20th.	vīcēsimus
4th.	quārtus	21st.	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus
5th.	quīntus		et vīcēsimus
6th.	sextus	28th.	duŏdētrīcēsimus
7th.	septimus	29th.	ūndētrīcēsimus
8th.	octāvus	30th.	trīcēsimus
9th.	nōnus	40th.	quadrāgēsimus
10th.	decimus	50th.	quīnquāgēsimus
11th.	ūndecimus	60th.	sexāgēsimus
12th.	duŏdecimus	70th.	septuāgēsimus
13th.	tertius decimus	80th.	octōgēsimus
14th.	quārtus decimus	90th.	nōnāgēsimus
15th.	quīntus decimus	100th.	centēsimus
16th.	sextus decimus	200th.	ducentēsimus
17th.	septimus decimus	1000th.	mīllēsimus

Ordinal numerals are declined like **bonus.**

196.   VOCABULARY.

Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*, Caesar.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (the country).

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Gaul (inhabitant of the country Gaul).

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*, (public thing), republic, state.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, send.

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī), petītus, seek, ask.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, conquer.

For numerals see **186** and **195.**

197.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Bonī cīvēs rem pūblicam servant, malī dēlent. 2. Annō centēsimō quadrāgēsimō sextō ante Dominī nostrī adventum clārissima Graeciae urbs ā Rōmānīs dēlēta est. 3. Quārtā diēī hōrā in scholam puerōs mittē- mus, ubi duās hōrās manēbunt. 4. Quot puerōs in scholam mittētis ? Quattuor mittēmus. Ūnus ūnam hōram manē- bit, cēterī duās hōrās manēbunt. 5. Quīnque mīlia passuum ad hostium castra mīlitēs nostrōs dūcēmus. Ibi cum hostibus contendēmus. 6. Hostīs vincēmus, castra incendiō dēlēbimus, multōs hominēs necābimus. 7. Decimō diē dux mīlitum mīlle equitēs ad oppidum hostium mittet. 8. Decem diēs ibi manēbunt; vīcēsimō diē nostram urbem petent. 9. Caesar secundō bellī annō in Galliam exercitum dūcit, Gallōsque multīs proeliīs vincit. 10. In Rōmānōrum rē pūblicā Caesar summam potestātem petēbat. 11. Quīntō bellī annō Caesar exerci- tum Rōmānum in Britanniam dūcēbat. 12. Centum nāvēs ā Galliā in Britanniam mittet. 13. Gallī fortēs hominēs erant. Multōs annōs cum Rōmānīs contendē- bant.

II. 1. Three hundred Lacedaemonians and four thou- sand other Greeks fought with the Persians at Ther- mopylae. 2. On the third day all the Lacedaemonians were killed. 3. The next year the Persians were de- feated, the leader was killed, and the army destroyed. 4. Seven kings held power in the city of Rome for two hundred and forty-four years. 5. The fourth king of Rome held power twenty-four years. 6. The fifth king was killed in the twenty-sixth year of his power. 7. How many citizens are there in our city ? 8. In the fourth

year of the war our city had one hundred and thirty
thousand citizens. 9. Before the second battle the citizens
were seeking peace. 10. How many ships will the city
send to Britain ?

———•◦◦◉◦◦•———

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

198. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect
tenses of the indicative active of dūcō. Compare the end-
ings with those of the same tenses of amō and habeō.

199.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Multīs proeliīs Caesar Gallōs vīcit, vīcerat. 2. Quot
mīlitēs dūcit, dūxit? 3. Duo mīlia hostium vincēmus,
vīcimus. 4. Equitēs ducentōs in castra mittimus, mittē-
mus. 5. Tertiō diē pācem petēbant, petent. 6. Ūnus
mīles cum septem hostibus contendit, contendet. 7. Rēx
vīgintī annōs imperium obtinēbat, obtinuerit. 8. Ūnō
diē exercitum trīgintā mīlia passuum dūxit, dūxerat.
9. Septimō diē in urbem contendimus, contenderāmus.
10. In hostium fīnēs lēgātus cōpiās dūcit, dūcet, dūxit.

II. 1. How many soldiers has he sent? how many will
he send? 2. We shall destroy the city, we have de-
stroyed (it). 3. The Trojans conquered in the first battle,
they will not conquer in the second. 4. I shall send the
boys to Gaul, I have sent (them). 5. Forty-five men

were wounded, they had been wounded in the first battle.
6. We shall lead the soldiers to the camp, we shall have
led (them). 7. They were hastening to the city, they
will hasten. 8. How many books have you, had you?
9. In the third year of the war the enemy sought peace,
they had sought peace. 10. We shall conquer (our)
enemies, we have conquered (them).

Personal Pronouns.

200. PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. egŏ, *I.*	nōs, *we.*
G. meī, *of me.*	nostrum *or* nostrī, *of us.*
D. mĭhĭ (mī), *to, for me.*	nōbīs, *to, for us.*
Ac. mē, *me.*	nōs, *us.*
Ab. mē, *from, by, with,* etc., *me.*	nōbīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *us.*

SECOND PERSON.

N., V. tū, *(thou) you.*	vōs, *you.*
G. tuī, *of (thee) you.*	vestrum *or* vestrī, *of you.*
D. tĭbĭ, *to, for (thee) you.*	vōbīs, *to, for you.*
Ac. tē, *(thee) you.*	vōs, *you.*
Ab. tē, *from, by, with,* etc., *(thee) you.*	vōbīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *you.*

THIRD PERSON.
Reflexive.

N. ———	———
G. suī, *of him(self), her(self), it(self).*	suī, *of them(selves).*
D. sĭbĭ, *to, for him(self),* etc.	sĭbĭ, *to, for them(selves).*
Ac. sē, sēsē, *him(self),* etc.	sē, sēsē, *them(selves).*
Ab. sē, sēsē, *from, by, with,* etc., *him(self).*	sē, sēsē, *from, by, with,* etc., *them(selves).*

1. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the sentence; as, **Helena sē laudat**, *Helen praises herself.* The place of the reflexive of the first and second person is supplied by the personal pronouns **ego, tū, nōs, vōs**; as, **Ego mē laudō**, *I praise myself;* **tū tē laudās**, *you praise yourself.*

2. The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used chiefly as partitive genitives. See **140.**

3. There are in Latin no special forms for the personal pronouns, *he, she, it,* and *they.* For the substitutes see **216.** 1.

4. When used with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition **cum** is enclitic (see **4.** 7); as, **mēcum, sēcum, vōbīscum.** So also with relative pronouns; as, **quōcum, quācum, quibuscum.**

201. VOCABULARY.

classis, -is, *f.,* fleet.

deus, -ī (*voc.* **deus;** *nom. and voc. pl.* **deī, diī,** *or* **dī;** *gen. pl.* **deōrum** *or* **deūm;** *dat. and abl. pl.* **deīs, diīs,** *or* **dīs**), *m.,* god.

poena, -ae, *f.,* punishment.

praemium, -ī, *n.,* reward.

terra, -ae, *f.,* land, earth.

ventus, -ī, *m.,* wind.

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.,* Romulus.

ego, I.

tū, thou.

suī, of himself, herself, itself.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do, act.

condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, found (*cities, etc.*).

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, do; **bellum gerere,** wage war.

202. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dī malīs hominibus poenās, bonīs praemia parant. 2. Magister dē urbe Trōiā multās fābulās nārrābit et dē rē pūblicā Rōmānā multās rēs docēbit. 3. Mīlitēs nostrī ad proelium sē parābant, hostēs autem nōn manēbant. 4. Dux mīlitēs nostrōs ad montem dūxerit, ubi nōs exspectābunt. 5. Tū quid agis? Dōnum tibi parō.

6. Cūr mihi dōnum parās? Quod tē amō. 7. Rōmulus
in rīpā flūminis urbem sibi condidit et urbī Rōmae nōmen
dedit. 8. Populus Rōmānus inter omnēs gentēs māxi-
mum imperium obtinēbat. 9. Quīntā diēī hōrā nūntium
ad classem mīserimus. 10. Nūntius ā duce classis pācem
petet. Quid dux classis respondēbit? 11. Caesar māgnā
classe exercitum in Britanniam mīserat. 12. Quot nāvēs
in classe erant? Ducentae et quīnquāgintā et trēs.
13. Vīs ventī classem in terram ēgit, ubi multae nāvēs
dēlētae sunt. 14. Rōmānī multa bella cum Gallīs gesse-
rant. Caesar Gallōs vīcit.

II. 1. Caesar waged war many years with the brave
tribes of Gaul. 2. He sent to the shore of Britain a fleet
of two hundred and forty-three ships. 3. He sought for
himself great influence among the Gauls. 4. He was
preparing himself and his soldiers for[1] another and a
greater war. 5. Romulus had founded a new city on a
hill. 6. Polyphemus feared the punishment of neither
gods nor men. 7. Did the boy ask you[2] for money? He
asked me for money and for books. 8. The master will
give you a book of stories about the Greeks. 9. He will
ask you for money for himself, a book for me. 10. He
will praise himself, he will not praise us.

203.   READING LESSON.
QUALITY BEFORE QUANTITY.

Ōlim bestiae omnēs inter sē contendēbant cuī (to whom)
māxima līberōrum (of children) familia (family) esset
(was, see 51). Tandem (at last) leōnem interrogāvērunt.
" Tū quot fīliōs habēs? "   " Ego," respondit, " ūnum
habeō; sed ille ūnus leō est."

---

[1] Use ad.   [2] See I. 10, above.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive.

Possessive Pronouns.

204. Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of dūcō.

205. From the personal pronouns are formed the possessive pronouns.

meus, -a -um, *my*.	tuus, -a, -um, *thy*.
noster, -tra, -trum, *our*.	vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.
	suus, -a, -um, *his, her, their*.

1. These are adjectives in construction and they are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension, except that the vocative singular masculine of meus is usually mī, sometimes meus.

2. Suus, like the personal pronoun from which it is formed, is reflexive.

3. Possession is denoted by the possessive pronouns, not by the genitive of the personal pronouns. Puer suam mātrem amat, *the boy loves his mother.*

206.   VOCABULARY.

sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom.

sapiēns, -ntis, wise.

meus, -a, -um, my, mine.

tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine.

noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.

vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, approach.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, demand.

incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsus, set on fire, burn.

tum, *adv.*, then.

207. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Deus leōnibus vīrēs corporis, equīs pedēs vēlōcēs, hominibus sapientiam, optimum dōnum, dedit. 2. Sapiēns vir auctōritāte plūs valet quam validus vir corporis vīribus. 3. Meus pater sapientior est quam tuus. Ego meum māximē amō, tū tuum. 4. Parvus puer dōnum sibi ā mātre suā pōstulāvit. Māter bonō fīliō praemium dedit. 5. Mīlitēs nostrī ad vestra castra appropinquābunt; tum vōs pācem petētis. 6. Decimō bellī annō urbs expūgnātur, mūrus dēlētur, domūs incenduntur, incolae multī necantur. 7. Lupī ā fortibus agricolīs ex agrīs in silvam aguntur. 8. Rōmulus cum sociīs suīs urbem Rōmam condēbat. 9. Multōs annōs ā Rōmānīs bellum gerēbātur cum incolīs Ītaliae. 10. Māgnā vī ventōrum classis tōtam noctem agēbātur; nautae terrēbantur et deōs vocābant. 11. Quot frātrēs habēs? Trēs frātrēs et duās sorōrēs habeō. 12. Altera mea soror in urbe habitat; altera agricolae uxor est. 13. Frātrum ūnus agricola est, aliī duo nautae sunt. 14. Ego neque agricola neque nauta erō; mīles erō et cum hostibus patriae nostrae bellum geram.

II. 1. Old men surpass the young in wisdom; the young surpass the old in strength of body. 2. You are wiser than I; you were always faithful at school. 3. I asked my mother for money, you asked yours for books. 4. The enemy approached our city and set it on fire. 5. Our houses were being burned and our wives and children frightened. 6. The leader then demanded from us a large sum of (much) money. 7. They were then put to flight by the approach of our fleet. 8. Our ships have defeated the fleet of the enemy in a second battle,

and our sailors will have a great reward.   9. Your king
had waged war with the Greeks many years.   10. On
the sixteenth day after his arrival in Greece[1] the Greeks
sent ambassadors about peace.

———•o○•●○o•———

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.

208. Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future
perfect indicative passive of dūcō.

Observe that the last three tenses do not differ in form
from the same tenses of the first and second conjugations.

209.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūntius mittitur, mittētur.   2. Urbs incēnsa est,
incēnsa erit.   3. Quid ā nōbīs petītum est, petītum erit?
4. Equī in aquam aguntur, āctī erant.   5. Multa bella ā
Rōmānīs gesta sunt, gesta erant.   6. Urbs Rōma ā
Rōmulō condita est, condita erit.   7. Hostēs terrēbuntur,
territī sunt.   8. In urbe vōs exspectābāmus.   9. Ā nōbīs
exspectābāminī.   10. Hostēs vincuntur, vincentur.
11. Ego tē vincam, tū ā mē vincēris.   12. Nōs in castrīs
tenēbāmur.

II. 1. You will be conquered, you have been conquered.
2. The city will be founded, has been founded.   3. Our
house was set on fire.   4. The soldiers were being led,

---

[1] Use in with acc.

they will be led. 5. The messenger has been sent to the city, he will have been sent. 6. A great war had been waged by Caesar. 7. We shall hasten to the camp. 8. The horsemen of the enemy were seen by our soldiers. 9. The horses will be driven into the fields. 10. They have been frightened by wild beasts. 11. The horsemen have been led into camp. 12. The leader of the enemy kept himself in the city three days. 13. On the fourth day he sought peace for himself and his soldiers.

210. VOCABULARY.

aries, -etis, *m.*, ram, battering-ram.

grex, gregis, *m.*, flock.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.

ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep.

onus, oneris, *n.*, burden, load.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, destruction.

onustus, -a, -um, burdened, laden.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious.

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, retain, hold back.

nihil, *adv.*, nothing.

211. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nihil reī pūblicae ūtilius est pāce; bellum autem perniciōsum est. 2. Urbs nostra ab hostibus expūgnāta erit, porta incēnsa erit, multae domūs dēlētae erunt. 3. Saepe malī hominēs quod poenās timent ā facinoribus retinentur. 4. Classis ventō in terram ācta est, ubi multae nāvēs dēlētae sunt. 5. Quod nāvēs dēlētae erant, pāx ab hostibus petīta est. 6. Ōlim agricola māgnum numerum ovium habēbat. 7. Prīnceps gregis māgnus ariēs erat. 8. Lupus ovibus perniciem parābat et ad gregem appropinquābat. 9. Parvus agricolae canis fortiter cum lupō pūgnāvit. 10. Māgnus autem et pulcher ariēs lupī adventum nōn exspectāvit, sed vēlōcibus pedi-

bus ē perīculō sē mōvit. 11. Lupus ā cane victus est;
victōrī ā dominō suō fortitūdinis praemium datum est.
12. Ōlim asinus frūmentō onustus ā lupō vīsus est.
13. "Cūr," interrogāvit lupus, "gravia onera portās?"
14. "Ego," asinus respondit, "ā dominō meō amor quod
onera portō; tē autem nēmō laudat."

II. 1. The ass is more useful than the wolf because he
carries loads. 2. Wisdom is a gift of the gods; wise
men are God's best gifts to men. 3. Ulysses with his
companions was approaching a cave. 4. Polyphemus
saw the Greeks and asked with a loud voice, "Why are
you approaching my cave?" 5. Ulysses replied, "We
have waged war with the Trojans for ten years. 6. In
the tenth year the city was burned. 7. Laden with
booty we were hastening to our country. 8. The force
of the wind held us back and drove us to your land.
9. The gods have led us to your cave. 10. We have no
(nothing of) food. 11. We ask you for one of your
beautiful sheep. 12. The gods will give you a reward."

212.   READING LESSON.

SCIPIO'S OPINION.

Duo cōnsulēs quōrum (*of whom*) ūnus pauper erat alter
autem avārus (*avaricious*) in senātū (*senate*) contendē-
bant utrum (*which of the two*) in Hispāniam (*Spain*) ad
bellum quod ibi gerēbātur ducem mittere dēbērent (*ought*)
senātōrēs. Māgna inter senātōrēs dissēnsiō (*disagreement*)
orta (*arose*) est. Tandem rogātus (*being asked*) sententiam
(*opinion*) Scipiō "Equidem (*indeed*)," respondit, "neu-
trum (*neither*) mittere dēbētis, quod alter nihil habet,
alterī nihil est satis (*enough*)."

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

213.   PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

hĭc, *this.*   ĭlle, *that.*

N.	hĭc	haec	hōc	ĭlle	ĭlla	ĭllud
G.	hūĭus	hūĭus	hūĭus	ĭllīus	ĭllīus	ĭllīus
D.	huĭc	huĭc	huĭc	ĭllī	ĭllī	ĭllī
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	ĭllum	ĭllam	ĭllud
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	ĭllō	ĭllā	ĭllō

PLURAL.

N.	hī	hae	haec	ĭllī	ĭllae	ĭlla
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	ĭllōrum	ĭllārum	ĭllōrum
D.	hīs	his	his	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	ĭllōs	ĭllās	ĭlla
Ab.	hīs	his	his	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs

1. Hĭc refers to that which is near the speaker and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person; hĭc puer, *this boy.*

2. Iste, *that (of yours),* is declined like ĭlle. It is applied to that which is near, or has some connection with the person addressed, and so is called the *demonstrative of the second person :* iste puer, *that boy (of yours).*

3. Ĭlle is applied to what is more remote, and so is called the *demonstrative of the third person :* ĭlle puer, *that boy.*

4. When hĭc and ĭlle are contrasted, hĭc usually means *the latter,* and ĭlle *the former.*

Ĭlle agreeing with a noun frequently means *well-known.*

214.   VOCABULARY.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.

somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep.

medius, -a, -um, middle.

sōlus, -a, -um (*gen.* sōlius, *dat.* sōlī), alone, only.

ultimus, -a, -um, last.

hīc, haec, hōc, this.

ille, illa, illud, that.

iste, ista, istud, that (of yours).

frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus, break.

frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.

paulō, *adv.*, a little.

tandem, *adv.*, at length.

215.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Multī hominēs pecūniam frustrā petunt. 2. Hae arborēs paulō altiōrēs sunt quam illae. 3. Ista tua soror pulcherrima est. 4. Domus patris ab istō puerō incēnsa est. 5. Magister noster sapiēns vir est. 6. Ā virō sapiente praemia nōbīs dabantur. 7. Malī mōrēs cīvium reī pūblicae perniciōsī sunt. 8. Frustrā cum fortibus hostibus bellum gerētis. 9. Bonōrum cīvium sapientiā rēs pūblica servātur. 10. Paulō ante mediam noctem hostēs in portam impetum faciunt. 11. Cūstōdēs portārum somnō tenēbantur neque hostēs vidēbant. 12. Portae statim ariete franguntur: diū et ācriter in castrīs pūgnātur. 13. Ūnus mīles sōlus cum māgnō numerō hostium contendit. 14. Prīma pars illīus proelī in castrīs erat, ultima pars ante portās. 15. Tandem hostēs fugātī sunt.

II. 1. The farmer was standing alone in the shade of this tree. 2. He had led his flock to these fields. 3. We have seen those beautiful sheep of yours. 4. These men had for ten years sought the destruction of this city. 5. In the middle of the night they approached this city. 6. At length with that battering-ram they broke (down) the gates. 7. They demanded from the king a large number of women and children (as) slaves. 8. In

vain the inhabitants ask the victors for peace. 9. Laden
with the booty of this famous city, the victors sought
their ship. 10. The inhabitants kept back nothing for
themselves. 11. Many cities were burned by those
Greeks in the last year of the war.

———o○✕○o———

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns. — *Continued.*

216. PARADIGMS.

Is, *this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N. is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
G. ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

Idem, *same.*

N. īdem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
G. ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		

ipse, *self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

1. **Is** is sometimes used as the personal pronoun of the third person, and then means *he, she, it*.

2. **Ipse**, the intensive pronoun, emphasizes a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees as an adjective. The reflexive pronoun *sē* is always used substantively. The following sentences will show the use of the two : —

1. **Mīles sē laudat**, *the soldier praises himself.*
2. **Mīles ipse laudātus est**, *the soldier himself was praised.*
3. **Ipse manēbō**, *I myself will remain.*
4. **Mulier epistulam ipsam mittit**, *the woman sends the letter itself*, or, *the very letter.*

217.   VOCABULARY.

Dārēus, -ī, *m.*, Darius.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, task.

īdem, eadem, īdem, the same.

ipse, -a, -um, self.

is, ea, id, that, this.

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, some (not none ; *used only in the pl.*).

superbus, -a, -um, proud.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactus, touch.

sub, *prep. (with acc. and abl.)*, under.

218.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid ā patre tuō postulāvistī?   2. Praemium postulāvī ā patre meō quod grave onus ex agrīs portāveram.   3. Parvus puer ūvam pulcherrimam vīdit et manū tetigit.   4. Ūva ā puerō fracta est; puer ipse ā patre suō abductus est.   5. Dārēus māgnus et superbus rēx Persārum erat.   6. Multae gentēs sub ēius imperiō erant.   7. Īdem māgnum exercitum et māgnam classem in Graeciam mīsit.   8. Ipse exercitum nōn dūxit, sed duōbus ducibus imperium dedit.   9. Hī māgnā exercitūs clāde ā Graecīs superātī sunt.   10. Multōs Persās Graecī necā-

vērunt, nōnnūllōs in nāvēs ēgērunt. 11. Duo illī ducēs cōpiās suās in patriam abdūxērunt. 12. Haec Graecōrum victōria ab omnibus semper memoriā tenēbitur. 13. Māgnum opus erat eōrum ; patriae lībertātem servāvērunt. 14. Difficile est hās rēs memoriā tenēre, sed labor omnia vincit.

II. 1. A fleet of five hundred ships was sent to Greece by Darius, the proud king of the Persians. 2. A little before this time many other nations had been conquered by the same king. 3. Darius sent with this fleet two illustrious leaders and gave to them a large number of troops. 4. These leaders sought the destruction of the cities of Greece, but they were put to flight with great loss. 5. There was an abundance of large grapes in a farmer's garden. 6. A little boy saw them but did not touch them himself. 7. That farmer gave the boy many clusters of grapes. 8. The boy told this to his mother, and she told the same to me. 9. I did not see the grapes. I had gone (given myself) to sleep alone under this tree.

219.   READING LESSON.
ROMULUS AND REMUS.

Rhea Silvia (*Rhea Silvia*) duōs fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, habuit. Ipsa ā patris suī frātre in vincula (*chains*) coniecta (*cast*) est; puerī īnfantēs (*infant*) in alveolō (*trough*) positī (*placed*) sunt et in flūmen abiectī (*cast away*) sunt. Flūmen alveolum cum parvīs puerīs in terram portāvit. Vāstae (*vast*) tum in eīs locīs sōlitūdinēs (*solitudes*) erant. Lupa (*she wolf*) ad vōcēs accurrit (*ran up*), īnfantēs linguā (*tongue*) lambit (*licked*), ubera (*udders*) eōrum ōrī (*to the mouth*) admōvit (*moved up*) mātremque sē gessit (*conducted herself as a mother*).

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Relative Pronoun.

220. Learn the present indicative active of **audiō** (p. 241).

221   PARADIGM.

quī, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

222.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Ego quī hōc petō homō sum,** *I who seek this am a man.*
2. **Urbs quam vidēs māgna est,** *the city which you see is large.*
3. **Puerī quōs vidētis frātrēs meī sunt,** *the boys whom you see are my brothers.*

Observe that the relative has the same gender, number, and person as the word (called the antecedent) to which it refers, but that its case is determined by its relation to the other words of the clause in which it stands. *Quī* in the first sentence, while it has no separate form to show its person, is nevertheless of the first person, and so the verb which agrees with it is in the first person.

223. RULE. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

224.   VOCABULARY.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom, reign.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish.

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, stand.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, come.

quī, quae, quod, who, which.

tam, *adv.*, so.

quam, *adv.*, as ; tam . . . quam, so . . . as.

225.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dārēus, quī in patriā suā rēgnum obtinēbat, in Graeciam exercitum mīsit.   2. Persae fortēs erant, sed nōn tam fortēs quam Graecī.   3. Audīsne patris tuī vōcem?   4. Audiō puerī vōcem quem pater pūnit.   5. Multī rēgēs superbī et malī, nōnnūllī autem bonī et sapientēs sunt.   6. In rē pūblicā Rōmānā senātus summum imperium obtinēbat.   7. Īdem senātus exercitūs in bella mittēbat.   8. Illa arbor ventō fracta est, haec autem valida et pulchra stat.   9. In validam arborem ventī frustrā impetūs faciunt.   10. Dux quī proeliō superātus erat exercitum suum in patriam abdūxit.   11. Opus Rōmulī quī urbem Rōmam condidit māgnum erat.   12. Illī quī aliīs perniciem parant saepe sibī perniciōsī sunt.   13. Paulō ante tertiam noctis hōram somnum petēmus.   14. Iste puer prīmus ad lūdōs, ultimus in scholam venit.

II. 1. The generals whom Darius sent to Greece were defeated in battle by the Greeks.   2. The ships which Caesar had detained in Britain were broken (wrecked) on the shore.   3. Caesar was slain by those who had been his friends.   4. He had carried on war in Gaul a long time, and had led back to Italy an army of conquerors.   5. In that state a friend of the Roman people had held the royal

power for many years.   6. I hear many things, I likewise
(the same one) see many things which I do not tell to
you.   7. Why do you come last to school?   Are you not
well?   8. I am well, but I waited for a friend a long
time.   9. This boy is not so faithful as that (one).

---∘o⦂⦂⦂∘o---

CHAPTER XL.

Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

Interrogative Pronoun.

226. Learn the imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect,
and future-perfect of the indicative active of **audiō**.

Compare the endings of each tense with the endings
of the same tense of **dūcō.**

In what tenses is there a difference?   In what does
the difference consist?

227.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Audit, audiēbat, audiet vōcem tuam.   2. Vēnit,
vēnerat, vēnerit in urbem.   3. Audīvī, audīveram, audī-
verō poētae fābulam.   4. Pūnīmus, pūnīverāmus, pūnī-
verimus malōs puerōs.   5. Audīsne vōcem meam?   6. Quō
diē veniētis?   7. Mīlitēs in Galliam vēnērunt.   8. Quid
audīvistis?   9. Cūr mē tetigistī?   10. Dux cōpiās suās
abdūxit, abdūxerat, abdūxerit.

II. 1. We hear, we were hearing. 2. You were coming, you had come. 3. They have come to the camp. 4. The father had punished his son. 5. I have heard a voice. 6. Whose voice did you hear? 7. On the sixth day they will have come to the city. 8. We will lead you to a beautiful place. 9. We shall punish the boy, we have punished him. 10. You came from the camp, we came from the city.

Interrogative Pronoun.

228.   PARADIGM.

quis, *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

When the interrogative is used as an adjective, it usually has the same form as the relative.

229.   VOCABULARY.

captīvus, -ī, *m.,* captive, prisoner.

pōns, pontis, *m.,* bridge.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** neighbors.

quis, quae, quid, who, what.

mūnīo, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify.

occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus, kill, slay.

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, leave.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, place, put.

numquam, *adv.,* never.

per, *prep.* (*with acc.*), through.

230.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quem herī in urbe vīdistī ?   2. Patrem tuum et
ēius frātrem vīdī.   3. Trōiānī ōlim cum fīnitimīs suīs
bellum gerēbant.   4. Dux mīlitēs in hostium fīnēs dūxit
et ad rīpam flūminis castra posuit.   5. Proximō diē cum
hostibus proeliō contendit.   6. Multī et[1] Trōiānōrum et
hostium occīsī sunt.   7. Trōiānī proeliō superātī sunt et
multī captīvī in hostium manibus relictī sunt.   8. Tandem
dux exercitum suum abdūxit et pontem frēgit.   9. Per
flūminis aquam hostēs in fīnēs Trōiānōrum vēnērunt.
10. Trōiānī sub mūrō urbis castra mūnīverant.   11. Ibi iī
quī neque occīsī neque vulnerātī erant fortiter cum hosti-
bus pugnāvērunt atque eōs fugāvērunt.   12. Audīvistisne
quae dē Trōiānīs nārrāvī ?   Audīvimus.   13. Bellum au-
tem dē quō nārrāvī numquam gestum est.   14. Cūius
librum in manū habēs ?   Meus est.   15. Ā quō tibi datus
est ?   Ā mātre meā.

II. 1. Caesar once sent to the senate this letter : " I
came, I saw, I conquered."   2. Romulus fortified with a
wall the city which he had founded.   3. The city which
Romulus founded bordered on (touched) a river.   4. The
lieutenant led his forces through the forest and placed
his camp on a neighboring hill.   5. Those nations never
slay those whom they conquer in war.   6. Many they
leave in their own[2] country, some they lead away (as)
captives.   7. Why did you come to this city ?   8. I was
eager to see the fortifications (works) of the city and the
new bridges.   9. In what city do you live ?   I live in the

---

[1] et . . . et, both . . . and.
[2] Their own country, *i.e.* the country of themselves.

same city as (*ubi*) you (live).   10. The chief who once
held the royal power there was called Superbus.

231.   READING LESSON.

THE YOUTH OF ROMULUS AND REMUS.

Pastor (*shepherd*) quī in eīs locīs habitābat, Faustulus
nōmine, parvōs puerōs in domum suam portāvit, ubi circā
(*about*) vīgintī annōs manēbant.   Tum iuvenēs in urbem
vēnērunt; Remum enim latrōnēs (*robbers*) captīvum in
urbem dūxerant, Rōmulus autem ut (*that*) frātrem
līberāret (*he might free*) cum armātīs (*armed*) sociīs
vēnit.   Remus facile ā frātre līberātus est.   Amulium
rēgem, quī Rheam Silviam in vincula (*chains*) coniēcerat
(*had cast*), propter illam iniūriam pūnīvērunt, Numitōrī
autem, avō (*grandfather*) suō, rēgnum dedērunt.   Deinde
(*then*) Rōmulus et Remus illam urbem reliquērunt et in
eīsdem locīs ubi expositī (*exposed*) ēducātīque (*brought
up* fuerant novam urbem condidērunt.

CHAPTER XLI.

Fourth Conjugation : Passive Voice.

Indefinite Pronouns.

232.   Learn the indicative passive of audiō.   Compare
the endings of each tense with the endings of the same
tense of dūcō, and observe the differences.

233.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Urbs nostra mūniētur, mūnīta est, mūniēbātur.
2. Vōx cōnsulis in senātū audīta erat, audītur, audīta
erit.   3. Iste puer pūnītus est, pūniētur, pūniēbātur.
4. Multae vōcēs audientur, audiuntur, audītae sunt.
5. Cūr in urbem veniunt, veniēbant, vēnērunt ?   6. Audī-
mur, audiēmur, audītī sumus.   7. Castra mūniuntur,
mūniēbantur, mūnīta erant.   8. Servī rēgis pūnientur,
pūnītī erant, pūniuntur.

II. 1. We have come to this city, shall come, were
coming.   2. You have been punished, you will be pun-
ished.   3. I shall not be punished, I have never been
punished.   4. The camp will be fortified, has been forti-
fied, will have been fortified.   5. What did you hear ?
whom did you hear ?   6. Who was heard ? what was
heard ?   7. Why shall we be punished ?   8. The voices
of the boys will be heard.

234.   INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The following are the more important indefinite pro-
nouns : —

1. Substantive **aliquis, (aliqua[1]), aliquid,** ⎫ *somebody, some one,*
              quis,   (qua[1]),   quid, ⎭   *some thing.*
   Adjective **aliquī,   aliqua (aliquae), aliquod,** ⎫ *some, any.*
              quī,   qua (quae),   quod,   ⎭
2. **quisquam,** ——   **quidquam** (no plural), *any one.*
3. **quīdam,   quaedam, quiddam (quoddam),** *a, a certain.*
4. **quisque,   quaeque, quidque (quodque),** *each, every.*
5. **ūllus,   ūlla,   ūllum,** *any.*

---
[1] The feminine of these substantive pronouns is rare.

These pronŏuns, except **ūllus**, are declined like the interrogative or the relative.   Where there are two forms, the one like the interrogative is used as a noun, the one like the relative as an adjective; but this distinction is not always observed, except in the neuter.   The neuter plural of **aliquī** is generally **aliqua**, of **quī** indefinite **quae** or **qua**. In the declension of **quīdam**, *m* becomes *n* before *d*, as, **quendam, quōrundam.**

The indefinite **quis** and **quī** are used chiefly after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num,** and will be introduced in connection with these particles.

Quisquam is used chiefly in negative sentences, and in sentences (chiefly interrogative) implying a negative.

235.   VOCABULARY.

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face.
aliquis, -qua, -quid, some, somebody, something.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), a, a certain.
quis, qua, quid, some, somebody, something.

quisque, quaeque, quidque, every, every one.
quisquam, . . . quidquam, some, somebody, something.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.

236.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid dē hāc rē putās?   Ego eadem putō quae tū putās.   2. Eadem dē illō virō quisque dīxit.   3. Quōque annō amīcī quīdam patris meī in urbem veniēbant. 4. Nārrābat aliquis fābulam quandam dē equō et asinō. 5. Num quid[1] dē frātre tuō audīvistī?   6. Audīvī aliquid, neque quidquam bonum erat.   7. Rōmānus quīdam in ponte stābat et multōs hostēs occīdit.   8. Multī rēgēs sub

---

[1] See **234.**

imperiō senātūs populīque Rōmānī erant.   9. Hūius
puellae vultus pulcherrimus est.   10. Malī hominēs ā
deīs semper pūniuntur.   11. Castra optimē mūnīta erant,
et captīvī cum cūstōdibus ibi relictī sunt.   12. Cottīdiē
per agrum amīcī meī in scholam veniō.   13. Per agrum
iter nōn tam longum est quam per viam.   14. Numquam
quemquam vīdī tē pulchriōrem.   15. Nōn dēbēmus cum
fīnitimīs nostrīs pūgnāre.

II. 1. Every day we hear something about you, but
we have not heard anything bad.   2. You did not hear
anything to-day from Greece, did you ?   3. Certain sena-
tors were eager to fortify our cities before the war.
4. They told us something which a certain senator had
said in the senate about this thing.   5. In what city did
you leave your son ?   6. We saw some of your neighbors
on our journey.   7. Xerxes was eager to punish those by
whom he had been defeated.   8. We live in the city a
part of every year.   9. The consul placed guards on each
bank of the river.

CHAPTER XLII.

Participles.

237. Learn all the participles, active and passive, of
amō, habeō, dūcō, and audiō; also of sum.   Note the stems
and endings.

Observe that there is no present passive nor perfect
active participle.

Participles ending in -*ns* are declined like **potēns.**   See
p. 57.   Those ending in -*us* are declined like **bonus.**   See
p. 19.

THE CASTLE OF ST. ANGELO.
(Once the Tomb of Hadrian.)

238. · ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hostēs pūgnantēs in urbem veniēbant,** *the enemy came fighting into the city.*

2. **Multōs in urbe occīsōs vidēbat,** *he saw many who had been slain in the city* (literally, *many having been slain,* or, *many slain*).

3. **Cibum parātum ad amīcum mīsit,** *he prepared food and sent it to his friend* (literally, *he sent food having been prepared,* or, *prepared food to his friend*).

4. **Eum in urbe manentem saepe vidēbam,** *I often saw him while he was remaining in the city* (literally, *him remaining in the city*).

5. **Mīles graviter vulnerātus fortiter pūgnāvit,** *although severely wounded, the soldier fought bravely* (literally, *the soldier, having been severely wounded, fought bravely*).

6. **Servus līberātus erit laetus,** *the slave, if liberated, will be glad* (literally, *the slave, having been liberated, will be glad*).

7. **Hīs rēbus mōtī pācem petēbant,** *because they were influenced by these considerations they sought peace* (literally, *moved by these considerations, they sought peace*).

Observe (1) that the participles in the above sentences agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case, like other adjectives ; (2) that the present participle represents an action as going on, and the perfect participle action as completed, with reference to the time denoted by the leading verb ; (3) that most of the participles are equivalent to clauses in English. Before translation, ascertain the precise idea expressed by the participle.

The use of the future active participle and the gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) is confined for the most part to special constructions, which will be considered in a later chapter.

120   A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN.

239.   VOCABULARY.

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course, race.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursū- rus, run.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read (*also gather*).

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.

bene, *adv. from* bonus, well.

contrā, *prep.* (*with acc.*), against.

inde, *adv.*, thence, from there.

itaque, *conj.*, therefore.

240.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amīcus noster multa putāns nihil dīxit. 2. Puer quīdam longam et bene scrīptam epistulam ad patrem mīsit. 3. Itaque pater laetō vultū epistulam illam lēgit. 4. In hortum cucurrit ubi uxōrī suae epistulam dedit. 5. Illam verba epistulae lēctae māximē dēlectāvērunt. 6. Sōl cottīdiē ē maris aquā veniēns altissimum locum occupat. 7. Inde longō cursū in mare currit, diem sēcum abdūcēns. 8. Urbs ā Rōmulō condita multās et superbās gentēs sub potestāte suā tenēbat. 9. Multī librī dē rēbus gestīs Rōmānōrum scrīptī sunt. 10. Contrā Rōmānōs multī rēgēs frustrā contendēbant. 11. Castra in colle posita optimē mūnīta erant. 12. Num quis illa castra expūgnābit? 13. Nēmō ea expūgnābit neque quisquam ad mūrum appropinquābit. 14. Mīlitēs quī portae cū- stōdēs sunt hostēs venientēs occīdent. 15. In mūrō stantēs cūstōdēs nostrī omnia vident quae ab hostibus parantur.

II. 1. Caesar was slain when he was coming into the senate. 2. The guard standing on the bridge saw the enemy approaching through the woods. 3. Who of you has read any work of this poet? 4. Ulysses, in a long course, came to the land of the Cyclops. 5. Thence in the tenth year after the burning of Troy he came to his

own country. 6. Your neighbors say something good about each of you. 7. I have read many well written books, but I remember (hold in memory) best the words of the poets. 8. I left my sister in the garden reading a new book.

241. READING LESSON.

The Reign of Romulus.

Novam urbem conditam Rōmulus et Remus Rōmam vocāvērunt. Urbs ā Rōmulō parvō mūrō circumdata (*surrounded*) est, quem Remus rīdēns (*laughing*) trānsilīvit (*leaped over*). Statim ā frātre īrātō (*angry*) occīsus est. Itaque Rōmulus sōlus rēgnum obtinēbat. In novam urbem multī virī veniēbant, sed uxōrēs nōn habēbant; quā dē causā Rōmulus Sabīnōs (*the Sabines*), quī Rōmānīs fīnitimī erant, ad lūdōs invītāvit (*invited*). Sabīnī cum uxōribus atque fīliābus vēnērunt. Tum Rōmānī impetum fēcērunt (*made*) et virginēs rapuērunt (*carried off*). Sabīnī armīs virginēs līberāre voluērunt (*wished*); illae autem novōs marītōs (*husbands*) amāre coeperant (*had begun*) et pācem fēcērunt. Post haec Rōmulus trīgintā et septem annōs rēgnum obtinēbat.

AQUILA.

CHAPTER XLIII.

Infinitives of Sum; Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Oblīqua); Subject of the Infinitive.

242. Learn the infinitives of **sum** (p. 248), and the infinitives, both active and passive, of **amō** and **habeō.**

The present infinitive has already been introduced in sentences in which it is used in Latin just as in English. and required no explanation; as,

> **In summō colle cōpiās collocāre contendit,**
> **Nōn dēbēmus cum fīnitimīs nostrīs pūgnāre.**

243. For a different use of the infinitive, examine the following sentences:—

DIRECT.   **Puer parat,** *the boy is preparing.*
INDIRECT. **Dīcō puerum parāre,** *I say that the boy is preparing.*
DIRECT.   **Locus parātus est,** *the place has been prepared.*
INDIRECT. **Putō locum parātum esse,** *I think that the place has been prepared.*
DIRECT.   **Puer parābit,** *the boy will (is going to) prepare.*
INDIRECT. **Videō puerum parātūrum esse,** *I see that the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

Observe that the sentences marked INDIRECT contain the same statements as the corresponding sentences marked DIRECT, but that in the sentences marked INDIRECT the statements are attributed to some speaker or observer. A statement thus attrib-

uted to any one, and not directly quoted, is called an *Indirect* statement, or a statement in *Indirect Discourse.*

In English, statements in Indirect Discourse are introduced by the conjunction *that* (which may sometimes be omitted), the subject is in the Nominative (Subjective) case, and the verb in the Indicative mood. In Latin, statements in Indirect Discourse are not introduced by a conjunction, the subject is in the Accusative case, and the verb in the Infinitive.

244. RULE.— *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

245. RULE.—*Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.*

246. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRESENT.

dīcit dīcet } dīxit	**puerum parāre,**	he says that the boy is preparing. he will say that the boy is preparing. he said that the boy was preparing.
dīcit dīcet } dīxit	**locum parārī,**	he says that the place is being prepared. he will say that the place is being prepared. he said that the place was being prepared.

PERFECT.

dīcit dīcet } dīxit	**puerum parā- visse,**	he says that the boy has prepared. he will say that the boy has prepared. he said that the boy had prepared.
dīcit dīcet } dīxit	**locum parātum esse,**	he says that the place has been prepared. he will say that the place has been prepared. he said that the place had been prepared.

FUTURE.

dīcit dīcet dīxit	puerum parātū- rum esse,	*he says that the boy will prepare.* *he will say that the boy will prepare.* *he said that the boy would (was going* *to) prepare.*
dīcit dīcet dīxit	locum parātum īrī,[1]	*he says that the place will be prepared.* *he will say that the place will be prepared.* *he said that the place would (was going* *to) be prepared.*

Observe that in the first six sentences the preparing takes place at the same time as the saying, in the second six at a time before (past to) the saying, in the third six at a time after (future to) the saying.

247. RULE.—*In Indirect Discourse the Present Infinitive is used to represent an action as going on; the Perfect, as completed; the Future, as in the future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying.*

248.   VOCABULARY.

Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; *m.*, an Athenian.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, guard.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, divide.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, impede.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.

ita, *adv.*, thus, so.

249.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Scīmus multās Graeciae cīvitātēs fuisse. 2. Athēniēnsēs in clārissimā Graeciae urbe habitāvisse docēmur. 3. Multī poētae Trōiam ā Graecīs dēlētam esse scrīpsērunt.

---

[1] A more usual form for the future passive infinitive is **fore** (a future infinitive of **sum**) **ut** and the subjunctive. See **395.**

4. Paulō ante quartam hōram nūntius ad ducem vēnit.
5. Nūntiat hostēs praedā impedītōs ā nostrīs mīlitibus
superātōs esse. 6. Captīvī putāvērunt exercitūs adventū
incolās territum īrī. 7. Domus nostra fīdō cane bene
cūstōdītur. 8. Pulchrior mulier quam Helena numquam
vīsa est. 9. Hunc puerum bonum virum futūrum esse
putāmus. 10. Castra ab hostibus tenērī nūntiātum est.
11. Statim contrā eōs duo mīlia mīlitum mīsimus. 12. Ita
diū ad castra pūgnātum est. 13. Equitēs in duās partēs
dīvīsī pūgnābant. 14. Captīvum aliquis dē cōnsiliō hos-
tium interrogāvit. 15. Dīxit sē nihil respōnsūrum esse.

II. 1. The boys thought that you would tell them
stories to-day about the Trojan war. 2. It is said that
the city of Troy was destroyed by fire. 3. We have heard
that Helen was the most beautiful of women. 4. A cer-
tain man said that he had seen the sun at midnight. 5. I
think that we shall remain in the city a few days. 6. The
booty divided into three parts was guarded by a band of
soldiers. 7. We were hindered a long time at the bridge
by the guards. 8. We were driven from our course by
the force of the wind; therefore we ask you[1] for help.
9. The messenger heard that many states of Greece had
been seized by Darius. 10. My brother said that you
lived in this city.

---

[1] See **202**, I. 10.

CHAPTER XLIV.

Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Expressions of Place.

250.   Learn the infinitives, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **audiō**.

Notice the stems and endings.

Give the infinitives, active and passive, of **legō, scrībō, petō, mūniō, impediō, sciō.**

251.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Expressions of Place.

1. **Mīlitēs in oppidō sunt,** *the soldiers are in the town.*
2. **Mīlitēs ad montem vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came to the mountain.*
3. **Mīlitēs ex agrīs vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came from the fields.*
4. **Mīlitēs Rōmae sunt,** *the soldiers are at Rome.*
5. **Mīlitēs Athēnīs sunt,** *the soldiers are at Athens.*
6. **Mīlitēs Rōmam vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came to Rome.*
7. **Mīlitēs Rōmā vēnērunt,** *the soldiers came from Rome.*

Notice that, in 1, the place *where* (or *in which*) is expressed by a preposition with the ablative case; in 2, the place *whither* (or *to which*) by a preposition with the accusative; and in 3, the place *whence* (or *from which*) by a preposition with the ablative.

Notice that with names of cities (4–7) no preposition is used, and that place *where* is expressed by the locative case.

In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative case is like the genitive. Elsewhere it is like the ablative. **Domus** has a locative **domī,** *at home,* and **rūs** has **rūrī,** *in the country.*

252. RULE. — *With names of cities and towns :* —

I. *Place where is expressed by the locative.*

II. *Place whither by the accusative* without *a preposition.*

III. *Place whence by the ablative* without *a preposition.*

Domus, *home,* and **rūs,** *country,* in expressions of place are used like names of cities.

253. VOCABULARY.

Corinthus, -ī, *f.,* Corinth.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, *f.,* Lacedaemon, Sparta.

mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.,* religion.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, collect, compel, force.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come together, assemble, convene.

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, command, order (*with acc. and inf.*).

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh, laugh at.

deinde, *adv.,* then, next.

unde, *adv.,* whence, from where.

254. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Bonōs librōs scrībere difficilius est quam longōs scrībere. 2. Caesar omnem Galliam in trēs partēs dīvīsam esse docet. 3. Pater dīxit sē fīlium suum pūnitūrum esse. 4. Athēniēnsis quīdam nautam venientem vidēns, "unde vēnistī?" dīxit. 5. Cui ille respondit sē Lacedaemone Corinthum missum esse. 6. Nōnnūllōs diēs Corinthī sē mānsisse dīxit. 7. Deinde Athēnās venīre iūssum ventō multās hōrās in portū sē retentum esse dīxit. 8. Itaque sē coāctum esse dīxit nāvem relinquere et in urbem currere. 9. Senātōrēs quoque mēnse in senātum conveniēbant. 10. Ibi multa et sapientia verba audiēbantur. 11. Ita rēs pūblica bene et sapienter gerēbātur. 12. Tertiā

hōrā domō in scholam veniō, frāter autem meus domī manet.   13. Post scholam cottīdiē domum currō. 14. Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum religiō multōs deōs esse docēbat.   15. Nōs ūnum deum esse scīmus; illam autem religiōnem rīdēre nōn dēbēmus.   16. Difficile est contrā somnum contendere.

II. 1. Caesar knew that his soldiers were faithful. 2. Our guest has come from Athens, and he says that he will remain at Rome two months.   3. The allies were commanded to assemble at Corinth.   4. Thence the chief led them against Troy.   5. The maid of a certain Roman once said that her master was not at home.   6. She had been commanded by her master to say so.   7. We thought that this bridge was well guarded.   8. We heard that you were coming from Rome to-day.   9. We know that you ran well, but that you were hindered in your course.

255.   READING LESSON.

NUMA POMPILIUS.

Post Rōmulī mortem per ūnum annum nūllus rēx erat. Deinde Numa Pompilius, Sabīnus (*Sabine*) genere, rēx creātus (*was made*) est.   Rōmulus multa bella gesserat; Numa nūllum gessit, tamen (*nevertheless*) reī pūblicae ūtilissimus erat, nam et lēgēs dedit et religiōnem docuit, quibus rēbus cīvium mōrēs meliōrēs fēcit (*made*).   Omnia autem quae faciēbat (*did*) sē cōnsiliō uxōris suae, Ēgeriae (*Egeria*), facere (*inf. of faciō, do*) dīcēbat.

ROMAN COIN.

CHAPTER XLV.

Subjunctive Mood.

Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Question.

256. Learn the subjunctive mood of **sum** (p. 247).

What must be added to the present infinitive to form the imperfect subjunctive? How does the perfect subjunctive differ from the future perfect indicative? What must be added to the perfect infinitive to form the pluperfect subjunctive?

257.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Audiō ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I am hearing where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
2. **Audiam ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I shall hear where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
3. **Audīverō ubi sīs, ubi fueris,** *I shall have heard where you are, where you have been* (or *were*).
4. **Audiēbam ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I was hearing where you were, where you had been.*
5. **Audīvī ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I heard where you were, where you had been.*
6. **Audīveram ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I had heard where you were, where you had been.*

The tenses of the principal clauses of the first three examples — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. The tenses of the principal clauses of the last three examples — the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

In the subjunctive, the present and perfect are primary; the imperfect and pluperfect, secondary.

To which class of tenses, primary or secondary, do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the first three examples belong? of the last three?

258. RULE. — *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

259.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.	INDIRECT QUESTIONS.
1. **Quis est tuus comes?** *Who is your companion?*	1. **Sciō quis sit tuus comes,** *I know who your companion is.*
2. **Ubi erās?** *Where were you?*	2. **Audīvī ubi essēs,** *I heard where you were.*
3. **Cūr āfuistī?** *Why were you absent?*	3. **Dīxistī cūr abessēs,** *You told why you were absent.*

Observe (1) that each dependent clause in the examples begins with an interrogative word; (2) that while it has not the form of a question, it gives the substance of the question opposite; (3) that it depends upon a verb. Such clauses are called *indirect questions.* Notice the mood of indirect questions.

260. RULE. — *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

261.   VOCABULARY.

Alba, -ae, *f.,* Alba, a city near Rome.

Albānus, -a, -um, Alban; *m.,* an Alban.

avus, -ī, *m.,* grandfather.

certāmen, -minis, *n.,* strife, struggle, combat.

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine; *m.,* a Sabine.

quantus, -a, -um, how great; *after* **tantus,** as.

tantus, -a, -um, so great.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reign.

iam, *adv.,* already.

quoque, *adv.,* also.

262.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Scīsne quantus sit numerus ovium nostrārum? 2. Nōn sciō quantus sit; numquam tantum gregem vīdī quantum habētis. 3. Tū quoque multās iam ovēs habēs, et plūrēs habēbis. 4. Avum tuum plūrimās ovēs habuisse dīcunt. 5. In quīnque gregēs eum ovēs suās dīvīsisse audīvī. 6. Multōs annōs Rōmulus et Remus ovēs cūstōdiēbant neque sciēbant quis pater suus esset. 7. Tandem cum amīcīs suīs Albam convenientēs malum rēgem pūnīvērunt et avō suō rēgnum dedērunt. 8. Is senex multōs annōs in Albānīs rēgnāvit. 9. Rōmulus novam urbem condidit et virginēs Sabīnās Rōmānīs uxōrēs dedit. 10. Deinde Sabīnōs contrā Rōmānōs venientēs novae illae uxōrēs ā certāmine retinuērunt. 11. Dīcam vōbīs quot virī herī in scholā fuerint. 12. Cūr rīdēs? Rīdeō quod nūllī virī in scholā fuērunt. Puerī sumus et puellae. 13. Sōl duodecim mēnsibus per tōtum cursum currit. 14. Religiō docet deum omnium rēgem esse. 15. Nautae in terram venīre iūssī vī ventōrum impedītī sunt. 16. Itaque tōtam noctem in marī manēre coāctī sunt.

II. 1. The teacher asked me who the grandfather of Romulus was. 2. I replied that he was a brother of the king of the Albans. 3. After the death of his brother he also reigned at Alba. 4. I will tell you who the second king of Rome was. 5. He was a Sabine in race, who kept his people from strife. 6. Do you know why I have been at home so long? 7. My father has been guarding his flock in the fields, and so I was compelled to remain at home. 8. Our flock is large, but it is not so great as yours (is). 9. Whence did you come to Lacedaemon? 10. I came from Corinth with a certain Athenian.

CHAPTER XLVI.

First Conjugation : Subjunctive Active.

Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses).

263. Learn the subjunctive active of amō. ·
Inflect the subjunctive of nārrō, occupō, portō, superō.

264.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Lēgātum mittit ut urbem occupet,** *he sends a lieutenant that he may seize, in order to seize, to seize, the city.*
2. **Lēgātum mittit quī (ut is) urbem occupet,** *he sends a lieutenant who is to seize, in order to seize, to seize, the city.*
3. **Ē duce petunt nē urbem occupet,** *they ask the commander that he may not seize, not to seize, the city.*

Notice the various English equivalents of the subordinate clauses beginning with *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, and also the mood of the verbs which follow these particles.

What is the difference in meaning between *ut* and *nē?*

Ut . . . occupet, quī . . . occupet, and *nē . . . occupet* express the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *clauses of purpose (final clauses).*

265. RULE. — *The subjunctive with **ut, nē,** or a relative is used to express purpose (final clauses).*

CAUTION. — The rule for sequence of tenses given in the last chapter must be observed in clauses of purpose (final clauses).

266.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Armat sē ut pūgnet, superet, rēgnet. 2. Armant sē ut pūgnent, superent, rēgnent. 3. Armāvit sē ut pūgnāret, superāret, rēgnāret. 4. Eōs retinet nē pūgnent,

vulnerent, superent.   5. Retinēbāmur nē pūgnārēmus,
vulnerārēmus, superārēmus.   6. Equitēs mīsit quī hostēs
exspectārent, superārent, fugārent.

II. 1. He sends them to carry, prepare, assist, preserve.
2. We came not to kill, but to preserve.   3. He will send
soldiers to overcome the enemy and seize the city.   4. He
sent soldiers to overcome the enemy and seize the city.

267.   VOCABULARY.

inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, enemy (*a per-
sonal enemy;* hostis *is an
enemy of the state*).
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hide,
conceal.
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create,
elect.
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,
decide, decree.

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, de-
clare (say toward).
enim, *conj.*, for (*stands second in
its clause*).
ut, *conj.*, that, in order that, so
that.
nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that
not.

268.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cūr Rōmānī Albānīs[1] bellum indīxērunt? 2. Bel-
lum indīxērunt ut rēx Rōmānus Albae quoque rēgnāret.
3. Rōmānī enim illō iam tempore māiōrem potestātem
petīvērunt. 4. Post Rōmulī mortem Rōmānī alium rēgem
creāvērunt. Quid eī nōmen erat? 5. Avus tuus domum
cucurrit ut ibi pecūniam suam cēlāret. 6. Dux māgnās
cōpiās mīsit quae hostium castra occupārent. 7. Ibi
māgnum certāmen erat; tandem locus expūgnātus est.
8. Inimīcus meus patrem tuum impedīre studēbat nē
mihi pecūniam daret. 9. Sed is iam dēcrēverat mihi
pecūniam dare. 10. Caesar in silvīs cōpiās suās colloca-

[1] Dat.; translate with *against.*

verat ut ibi adventum hostium exspectārent. 11. Cūr in silvīs cōpiās collocāvit? Nōnne māgnum exercitum habēbat? 12. Māgnum exercitum habēbat, sed nōn erat tantus quantus erat hostium numerus. 13. Avus meus Lacedaemone Corinthum vēnit. Corinthī duōs mēnsēs manēbit ut adventum tuum exspectet. 14. Senātōrēs mediā nocte convenīre coāctī sunt ut cōnsilia cēlārent.

II. 1. You have asked why the Romans declared war against the Albans. 2. You will read in another place about this struggle and about the destruction of Alba (about Alba destroyed). 3. For the Romans conquered and destroyed the city (of) Alba. 4. Then they compelled the Albans to settle (place themselves) at Rome. 5. The Sabines sent forces to seize the city (of) Rome. 6. The Romans will assemble in the city to await the coming of the Sabines. 7. The Sabines killed a maiden who led them into the city, that she might not report their coming. 8. The Romans once decided to have no king, but to elect two consuls. 9. The Greeks and the Romans had many Gods, but we will not laugh at their religion. 10. Your enemies say that you have concealed your money.

269. READING LESSON.

TULLUS HOSTILIUS.

Interrogāsne quis post Numam rēx fuerit Rōmae? Tullus Hostilius erat, cūius avus in bellō contrā Sabīnōs fortiter et ācriter pūgnāverat. Rēx creātus bellum Albānīs indīxit. Id bellum nē nimis (*too*) longum esset Tullō et Albānōrum ducī placuit (*it was pleasing*) paucōrum certāmine rem dēcernī. Erant apud Rōmānōs trige-

minī (*triplets*) Horātiī (*the Horatii*), trigeminī quoque
apud Albānōs Cūriātiī (*the Curiatii*). Hī inter sē pugnā-
vērunt. Cūriātiī omnēs occīsī sunt; Horātius ūnus
victor relictus est. Ita Rōmānī cum victīs Albānīs
pācem fēcērunt (*made*). Sed nōn diū pāx illa mānsit.
Propter perfidiam (*perfidy*) ducis Albānī Tullus Albam
urbem dēlēvit, Albānōsque ipsōs Rōmam venīre iūssit.
Ita Rōma urbs multitūdinem cīvium accēpit (*received*).
Tullus māgnā glōriā (*glory*) bellī duōs et trīgintā annōs
rēgnāvit.

CHAPTER XLVII.

First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive.

Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses).

270. Learn the subjunctive passive of amō.

271. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer tam dēfessus erat ut eum iuvārem,** *the boy was so
   tired that I helped him.*
2. **Puer ita ēgit ut nōn amārētur,** *the boy acted so that he was
   not loved.*
3. **Hostēs tam fortēs erant ut noster exercitus superārētur,**
   the enemy were so brave that our army was overcome.
4. **Nēmō tam bonus est quī ab omnibus amētur,** *no one is
   so good that he is loved by all.*

The clauses beginning with *ut* and *quī* in these sentences
denote result (consecutive clauses). Observe that they are the
same in form as purpose clauses, except that *ut nōn* is used
instead of *nē* in negative sentences.

272. RULE. — *The subjunctive with ut, ut nōn, or a relative, is used to express result.*

273. VOCABULARY.

aequitās, -ātis, *f.*, equity, fairness.

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, manner.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, Numa (*a king of the Romans*).

perfidia, -ae, *f.*, perfidy, treachery.

Tullus Hostilius, Tulli Hostilī, *m.*, Tullus Hostilius.

ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enlarge.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call (give a name).

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns and dūcō), lead across, transfer.

quārē, *adv.*, on what account, why.

274. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Tullus Hostilius quī post mortem Numae rēx creātus est, priōrī rēgī dissimilis fuit. 2. Interrogās mē quō modō hīc rēx fīnēs suōs ampliāverit. 3. Multa bella cum fīnitimīs gessit ut fīnēs suōs ampliāret. 4. Auxilium ā sociō, rēge Albānōrum, pōstulāvit ut hostēs convenientēs superāret. 5. Dux Albānōrum in collem cōpiās abdūxit ut fortūnam proelī exspectāret. 6. Tullus propter perfidiam Albānōrum dēcrēvit urbem eōrum dēlēre et cīvēs Rōmam trādūcere. 7. Cōpiās mittit quae urbem Albam expūgnent. 8. Dīcam tibi quārē dux cōnsilia cēlet. 9. Eius ducis cōnsilia ita cēlāta sunt ut hostibus nōn nūntiārentur. 10. Quī rēx cum tantā aequitāte rēgnāvit ut ab omnibus laudārētur? 11. Rōmānus quīdam cum tantā fortūnā bellum gessit ut Māgnus appellārētur.

II. 1. The perfidy of the Alban king was so great that Tullus declared war against the Albans. 2. The Albans fought bravely that their city might not be destroyed.

3. The Romans also fought bravely, for they did not fear the combat.   4. The dangers of this war are not so great as (those) of the former war.   5. The king of the Sabines has already reigned twenty years.   6. My grandfather was your father's enemy, but I am your friend.   7. The young men laughed at the little boy's large words.   8. The high water of the river hindered the king from leading (that he might not lead) his army across.   9. We shall be forced by the winds to remain a whole month· in Corinth.

———◦◦╳◦◦———

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood.

Purpose and Result Clauses. — Continued.

275. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of habeō.

276.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

1. **Timet ut locum occupet,** *he fears that he may not get possession of the place.*
2. **Timet nē hostēs locum occupent,** *he fears that the enemy will get possession of the place.*
3. **Timēbat nē amīcum vulnerāret,** *he was afraid he might wound his friend.*
4. **Timēmus ut in urbem vēnerit,** *we fear he has not come to the city.*

Observe that in these sentences *ut* is translated with *not*, and *nē* without it.

277.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Quīn.

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn amētur,** *I do not doubt that he is loved.*
2. **Nōn dubitāmus quīn amīcōs nostrōs iuvēmus,** *we do not doubt that we are assisting our friends.*
3. **Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn bonus esset,** *they did not doubt that he was good.*
4. **Nōn dubitābant quīn hostēs vēnissent,** *they did not doubt that the enemy had come.*

After negative expressions of doubt **quīn,** followed by the subjunctive, is used.

278.   VOCABULARY.

Ancus, -ī, *m.*, Ancus (*a king of the Romans*).

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.

Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin ; *m.*, a Latin.

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase (*with object*), enlarge.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt.

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (in *and* **veniō),** come to, find.

repetō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, demand back.

superbē, *adv.*, proudly.

quīn, *conj.*, but that, that.

279.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ancus timēns nē propter multitūdinem cīvium facinora augeantur carcerem aedificāvit. 2. Timet propter perfidiam sociōrum ut pāx maneat. 3. Timeō ut hīc rēx aequitāte avō similis sit. 4. Equōs ex agrīs Rōmānōrum Latīnī ēgērunt; paucīs verbīs hōs Rōmānī repetiērunt. 5. Nōn dubitō quīn superbē Latīnī responderint. 6. In silvīs animālia sua nē ā Rōmānīs vidērentur retinuērunt. 7. Nihil Rōmānōs impediet nē fīnēs suōs ampliant. 8. Quōque annō populus Rōmānus conveniēbat ut cōn-

sulēs creāret.   9. Inveniēmus quō modō nepōs Numae rēgnāverit ēt quārē prīmus carcerem aedificāverit. 10. Rōmam Albānōs trādūxerat.   Nōnne timēbat nē hī malī cīvēs essent?

II. 1. I fear that the power of my enemies is increasing (being increased).   2. The Romans often declared war against their neighbors, that they might enlarge their territory.   3. We do not doubt that many great crimes are hidden.   4. Do you know why Tullus decided to declare war against the Albans?   5. The Romans loved King Numa, for he gave them laws and religion.   6. The city where the grandfather of Romulus reigned was called Alba.   7. I fear that you do not know who the grandfather of Romulus was.   8. The Latins replied proudly to the Roman ambassadors when they demanded back (demanding back) the property (things).   9. We have never doubted that the Romans increased their power by this war.

280.   READING LESSON.

ANCUS MARTIUS.

Post Tullī mortem Ancum Martium rēgem populus creāvit.   Is Numae Pompilī nepōs erat, cui aequitāte et religiōne similis erat.   Tum Latīnī, quī Rōmānōrum amīcī fuerant, in fīnēs eōrum exercitum mīsērunt, et frūmentum dēlēvērunt et ex agrīs agricolārum animālia ēgērunt.   Ancus nōndum (*not yet*) bellum eīs indīxit, sed lēgātum mīsit et rēs repetīvit.   Ille mōs apud Rōmānōs multōs annōs manēbat, quī post id tempus hōc modō bellum indīcēbant.   Lēgātus Rōmānus, ubi (*when*) ad fīnēs vēnit eōrum ā quibus rēs repetuntur, capite vēlātō (*veiled*) ait (*says*), "Audī (*hear*), Iūpiter, audīte (*hear*), fīnēs hūius

populī.   Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī, verbīs
meīs fidēs sit (*let . . . be*)."   Deinde rēs repetit.   Sī (*if*) nōn
dēduntur (*surrendered*) rēs quās pōstulat, hastam (*spear*)
in fīnēs hostium ēmittit (*hurls*) bellumque ita indīcit.
Lēgātus ille fētiālis (*fetial*) appellātur.   Latīnī lēgātō rēs
repetentī superbē (*proudly*) respondērunt; quārē bellum
eīs indictum est.   Rōmānī Latīnōs proeliō superāvērunt,
oppida eōrum dēlēvērunt, cīvēs ipsōs Rōmam venīre co-
ēgērunt.   Nē facinora in tantā multitūdine hominum augē-
rentur Ancus carcerem in mediā urbe aedificāvit.   Pontem
in Tiberī fēcit (*built*) ut Mōns Iāniculum (*Janiculum*) urbis
pars esset.   Ancus quattuor et vīgintī annōs rēgnāvit.

———o◦◖◍◗◦o———

CHAPTER XLIX.

Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.

281. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods and the
participles, active and passive, of **capiō** (p 244).

Of which conjugation is **capiō**?   Why?

Compare each tense with the same tense of **dūcō** and
note the differences in formation, if there are any.

Like **capiō**, conjugate all the verbs in -iō in **282**.

282.   VOCABULARY.

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.,* Janiculum.
Porsenna, -ae, *m.,* Porsenna.
Tiberis, -is, *m.,* Tiber (*river*).
incolumis, -e, uninjured, safe.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus,
    capture, take.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus,

make, do.   (*Irregular in
    the pass.* See p. 253.)
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus, flee.
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw.
rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus,
    break down.
mox, *adv.,* presently.

283. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Capiuntur, capiminī, capiēbāmur. 2. Iacis, iaciēs, iaciēbās lapidēs. 3. Lapis iacitur, iaciētur, iaciēbātur. 4. Fugiēmus Athēnīs. 5. Fugiēbāmus ab urbe. 6. Fugiētis Corinthō. 7. Parātī erant iter facere. 8. Longum iter fēcimus. 9. Multī captī sunt. 10. Putat omnēs captōs esse.

II. 1. We are throwing stones, we shall throw stones. 2. We have been taken, they will be taken. 3. We are making a journey to Rome. 4. He reports that the city has been taken. 5. The boys threw stones and fled home. 6. What were you doing? 7. The town had been taken. 8. I shall flee from home to Corinth. 9. Stones were thrown by the boys. 10. He reported that the enemy had taken the city.

III. 1. Nēmō dubitat quīn Numae nepōs prīmus carcerem aedificāverit. 2. Invēnistis quārē senātōrēs ā Rōmānīs patrēs appellārentur. 3. Rēx Rōmānōrum quī superbius rēgnāverat Rōmā fugere coāctus est. 4. Ad Porsennam rēgem vēnit et auxilium ab eō petīvit ut rēgnum suum servāret. 5. Ille māgnum exercitum parāvit ut Rōmam expūgnāret et mox ad urbem vēnit. 6. Prīmō impetū collem Iāniculum ā Rōmānīs appellātum cēpit. 7. Māgna pars urbis Tiberī flūmine mūnīta erat. 3. Pontem quī in flūmine factus erat paucī Rōmānī cūstōdiēbant. 9. Itaque Porsenna in pontem impetum fēcit. 10. Multī timent nē urbs occupētur et dēleātur. 11. Cēterī Rōmānī fugiunt; sōlus autem Horātius hostēs ita retinet ut urbs servētur. 12. Pontem in quō stābat rescindī iūssit. 13. Rōmānī fēcērunt quod ille eōs facere iūsserat. 14. Deinde Horātius in Tiberim sē iēcit et incolumis ad eōs quī pontem resciderant vēnit.

IV. 1. No one doubts that Troy was taken by the Greeks in the tenth year of the war. 2. In what manner did Numa enlarge the Roman state? 3. He enlarged the state by equity and laws and religion. 4. But the treachery of the king destroyed the state of the Albans. 5. In this manner the Romans increased their power. 6. They demanded back property (things), next declared war, presently made an attack upon (in) their enemies. 7. The conquered Trojans fled into the city, that they might not be killed. 8. They feared that they might be killed or captured by the victors. 9. The women and old men will throw stones from the wall upon (on) the heads of the enemy.

CHAPTER L.

Deponent Verbs.

284. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive has the active form (**mīrātūrus esse**, not **mīrātum īrī**), and they have the participles of both voices.

> **cōnāns,** *trying.*   **cōnātus,** *having tried.*
> **cōnātūrus,** *about to try.*   **cōnandus,** *to be tried.*

The perfect participle is usually active in meaning, but the gerundive (Chapter LXIII.) is always passive.

285.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Mīles gladiō ūtitur,** *the soldier uses his sword.*
2. **Caesar urbe potītus est,** *Cæsar got possession of the city.*

Observe that *gladiō* is used with *ūtitur*, and *urbe* with *po-titus est*.

A few other verbs are followed by the ablative.

286. RULE. — *The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor** and their compounds govern the ablative.*

287. VOCABULARY.

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, Tarquin.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, try.

fruor, fruī, fruitus and **frūctus,** enjoy.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, slay, kill.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, free, set free.

patior, patī, passus, suffer, allow.

potior, potīrī, potītus, get possession of.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus, set out, go.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, set up again, restore.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, use.

vereor, -ērī, veritus, fear.

288. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Multīs librīs ūtimur, nōnnūllīs fruimur. 2. Omnēs bonīs librīs fruī dēbent. 3. Iuvenis fortissimus gladiō armātus in castra Porsennae, quī Tarquinium in rēgnum restituere cōnābātur, profectus est. 4. Verētur nē rēx restitūtus rem pūblicam Rōmānōrum dēlēre cōnētur. 5. Nōn interrogāvit quis rēx esset, sed eum quem Porsennam esse putāvit interfēcit. 6. Mox ā mīlitibus captus ad rēgem ductus est. 7. Rēx interrogāvit quis auctor illīus facinoris esset. 8. Num auctor tantī facinoris ūnum diem vītā utētur [1]? 9. Nōnne iuvenis fugere ex castrīs Porsennae et in Tiberim sē iacere cōnābitur? 10. Multī iuvenēs Rōmānī tē, rēx, interficere et omnia

---

[1] *Have the use of.* Here nearly equivalent to **fruētur.**

patī dēcrēvērunt ut patriam suam līberārent. 11. Eā
urbe nōn facile potiēris. 12. Nōn dubitō quīn Numae
nepōs prīmus carcerem aedificāverit.

II. 1. The bridge which the Romans had made was
broken down by the enemy. 2. They made the bridge
that they might lead their forces across to the hill
Janiculum. 3. They fortified the Janiculum with a wall
and in this way increased (the size of) the city. 4. Pres-
ently we shall find that the Romans employed (used)
their power proudly. 5. A messenger was sent to demand
back the animals which had been driven from the fields.
6. We did not doubt that the enemy were trying to
get possession of the camp. 7. Therefore we feared
that our soldiers were suffering many dangers. 8. Tar-
quin was killed that the sons of Ancus might be restored
to (into) the royal power. 9. But the sons of Ancus did
not enjoy the royal power, for Tullus was elected king.

289.   READING LESSON.

LUCIUS TARQUINIUS PRISCUS.

Quīntus Rōmānōrum rēx Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus
erat. Is urbe Tarquiniīs (*Tarquinii*) profectus cum uxōre
et omnibus rēbus quās habēbat Rōmam vēnerat. Adveni-
entī (*coming*) eī aquila pīleum (*cap*) sustulit (*removed*) et
rūrsus (*again*) capitī imposuit (*put on*). Tanaquil (*Tana-
quil*) uxor, quae sapiēns erat mulier, hāc rē māgnam
potestātem et rēgnum eī portendī (*to be foretold*) dīxit.
Hanc spem (*hope*) sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī
(*entered*) sunt, ubi Tarquinius pecūniā et industriā (*dil-
igence*) māgnam auctōritātem atque etiam (*even*) Ancī
rēgis amīcitiam cōnsecūtus (*obtained*) est, ā quō tūtor

(*guardian*) līberīs (*children*) relictus rēgnum occupāvit.
Is cum Sabīnīs bellum gessit, in urbe nōnnūllās rēs bene
ōrdināvit (*arranged*).   Tandem ā pastōre (*a shepherd*)
quōdam occīsus est.   Ancī enim fīliī ut patris suī
rēgnum occupārent duōs pastōrēs quī Tarquinium necā-
rent parāvērunt.   Hōrum alter trīcēsimō et octāvō rēgnī
annō rēgem necāvit.

———•o⦂⦂o•———

CHAPTER LI.

Possum : Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.

290. Learn the indicative and the infinitive moods of
possum (p. 248).

291.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Laudārī est grātum,** *to be praised is pleasant*, or, *it is pleasant
   to be praised.*
2. **Vidērī nōn est semper esse,** *seeming* (*to seem*) *is not always
   being* (*to be*).

Observe that *laudārī* (in 1) and *vidērī* (in 2) are subjects,
and that *esse* (in 2) is a predicate.   This use of the infinitive
is common to both English and Latin, but more common in
Latin.

292. RULE. — *An infinitive with or without a subject-
accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence or as
a predicate noun.*

293.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Pūgnāre nōn potest,** *he cannot fight.*
2. **Pūgnāre nōn poterat,** *he could not fight.*
3. **Pūgnāre parābant,** *they were preparing to fight.*

Observe that the infinitive *pūgnāre* is used with *potest, poterat,* and *parābant* not as subject, but to complete the thought. This use of the infinitive also is common to English and Latin.

Such an infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive.*

294. RULE. — *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

Remember that *can* and *could* should usually be expressed by some form of *possum.*

295.　　　　EXERCISES.

I. 1. Currere nōn potes.　2. Nihil vidēre potest. 3. Iuvāre mē poterit.　4. Vincere potuimus.　5. Multa facere potuerāmus.　6. Cōpiīs suīs collem occupāre contendit.　7. Castra capere potuērunt.　8. Domum venīre potest.　9. Domī manēre nōn poteritis.

II. 1. I can do nothing.　2. He could not use his sword.　3. We shall not be able to come.　4. You were not able to read that book.　5. We can run.　6. They tried to take the town.　7. He says we cannot run. 8. He had not been able to see the king.

296.　　　　VOCABULARY.

fraus, fraudis, *f.,* fraud, deceit.

industria, -ae, *f.,* industry, diligence.

pastor, -ōris, *m.,* shepherd.

nōbilis, -e, noble, of high birth.

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, obtain, attain (follow and catch up with).

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, desire.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, be born.

possum, posse, potuī, be able.

sequor, -ī, secūtus, follow.

sine, *prep. (with abl.),* without.

etiam, *adv.,* even, also.

297. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cūr hominēs tam saepe locum ubi nātī sunt relinquunt? 2. Ut fortūnās suās augeant in urbem hominēs saepe proficiscuntur. 3. In urbe etiam labōre et industriā hominēs multās rēs quās cupiunt cōnsecuntur.[1] 4. Nēmō potest omnibus labōrum generibus fruī. 5. Fīliī priōris rēgis cupīvērunt rēgnō ā Tarquiniō occupātō potīrī. 6. Pastōrēs quī interficere rēgem cōnātī sunt incolumēs fugere nōn potuērunt. 7. Putāvērunt cūstōdēs nōn cōnātūrōs esse gladiīs ūtī. 8. Pastōrēs ut captīvōs līberent portās rescindere cōnābuntur. 9. Haec ancilla nōbilis fēmina erat quae bellō capta erat. 10. Nōn sine fraude potestās rēgis restituī potest. 11. Nōn omnēs quī fortūnam secuntur etiam cōnsequī eam possunt.

II. 1. To get possession of power is pleasant, but it is better to attain virtue. 2. The brave man suffered death that his (fellow) citizens might be freed. 3. So the liberty of the state was restored by the courage of one man. 4. The good shepherd guards his flock, that the wolves may not be able to approach. 5. The shepherds killed Tarquin, but they could not do this without deceit. 6. In what year were you born? 7. I was born in the 120th year of the independence (liberty) of our native land. 8. A girl threw a stone from the bank into the river. 9. Her brother could throw stones even to the other bank. 10. We have displayed (used) great diligence in school; presently we shall enjoy our liberty.

---

[1] Cu is usual instead of quu.

CHAPTER LII.

Compounds of Sum.

Dative with Compounds.

298. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods of prōsum (p. 249).

The peculiarities of compounds of sum, except possum and prōsum, will be readily learned from the vocabulary.

299.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **In perīculīs amīcīs aderat,** *he aided his friends in dangers.*
2. **Tarquinius equitibus praefuit,** *Tarquin commanded the cavalry.*
3. **Albānīs bellum indīxērunt,** *they declared war against the Albans.*

Notice that the verbs of the above sentences are compounded with *ad, prae,* and *in,* and that they govern the dative case.

300. RULE. — *Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** govern the dative as indirect object.*

The dative is used with all compounds of *sum* except *possum* and *absum.*

301.   VOCABULARY.

līberī, -ōrum, *m.* (*pl.*), children.

marītus, -ī, *m.,* husband.

absum, -esse, āfuī, be absent, distant, away.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, be present, assist.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, put around, surround.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, edu-
cate, bring up.

morior, morī, mortuus, to die.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, be over,
command.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, be
profitable, help.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, be over,
remain.

302.   **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Horātius poēta duodecim annōs nātus[1] Rōmam
profectus est. 2. Fruētis operibus ēius quōrum multa
supersunt. 3. Nōbilis nōn fuit, sed nōbilium cum līberīs
Rōmae ēducātus est. 4. Virtūte suā Horātius clārōrum
virōrum amīcitiam cōnsequī potuit. 5. Cōpiīs etiam
Rōmānīs in Graeciā praefuit. 6. Mortuus est Rōmae
nātus septem et quīnquāgintā annōs. 7. Sapientium
virōrum amīcitia iuvenibus semper prōdest. 8. Meus
pater cupit suōs līberōs cottīdiē in scholā adesse. 9. Cūr
herī āfuistī? Auxiliō tuō ūtī cupīvī. 10. Rōmulus ā
quō Rōma condita est inter pastōrēs ēducātus est.
11. Numa cīvitātī prōfuit; lēgēs enim dedit et novum
urbī mūrum circumdedit. 12. Mulier verēbātur ut marī-
tus in fraude sibi adesset.

II. 1. We cannot without industry attain those things
which we desire. 2. We feared that the house which had
been destroyed by fire would not be restored. 3. Our
soldiers having followed the fleeing enemy a long time,
even tried to take the camp. 4. It is better to suffer
wrongs than to do (them). 5. The bad king was slain
that the citizens might be freed. 6. Rome was thirty miles
distant from Alba. 7. The city (of) Alba has been de-
stroyed so that nothing remains. 8. The brave man died

---

[1] *i.e.* twelve years old.

to prepare liberty for his children.   9. Who is in command of the army?   I do not know who is in command of our forces.

303.   READING LESSON.

SERVIUS TULLIUS.

Servius Tullius, sextus Rōmānōrum rēx, mātre nōbilī sed captīvā nātus, in domō Tarquinī Prīscī cum līberīs ēius ēducātus est atque fīliam ēius in mātrimōnium (*marriage*) dūxit.   Tarquinius in domō suā ā pastōre occīsus est. Cūius mortem Tanaquil cēlāvit et ē superiōre parte domūs loquēns (*speaking*) populō dīxit Tarquinium vulnerātum nōn mortuum esse, eum aūtem petere ut, dum (*until*) ipse convalesceret (*should get well*), Servius Tullius summam potestātem tenēret.   Ita Servius fraude rēgnum occupāvit, sed potestāte suā bene ūsus est, neque eī fortūna āfuit.   Sabīnōs superāvit, trēs montēs urbī adiunxit (*added*), mūrō urbem circumdedit.   Īdem cēnsum (*census*) fēcit et populum in classēs (*classes*) et centuriās (*centuries*) dīvīsit, et ut urbs pulchrior esset mēgnum Diānae (*Diana*) templum (*temple*) aedificāvit.   Bonus rēx atque potēns erat, sed contrā fīliam suam et ēius marītum neque potestātem neque vītam suam dēfendere (*protect*) potuit.

———o◦o❋◦o◦———

CHAPTER LIII.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

304. 1. **Hīc liber mihi placet,** *this book pleases me.*
   2. **Puer patrī pāret,** *the boy obeys his father.*
   3. **Mīles gladiō sibi nocuit,** *the soldier hurt (injured) himself with his sword.*

The Arch of Titus.

Observe that these verbs govern the dative in Latin, though their English equivalents are transitive.

305. RULE. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, *i.e.* corresponding to an English verb with the indefinite *it* as a subject; as *nocētur*, it hurts (injures), *i.e.* harm (injury) is done; *patrī pārētur*, obedience is rendered to the father. Observe that with the impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, the dative used with the active is retained unchanged.

Dēlectō, iuvō, and *iubeō* (already familiar to the pupil), and a few other verbs of this class govern the accusative.

306. · VOCABULARY.

cūria, -ae, *f.,* senate-house.
forum, -ī, *n.,* forum.
ferōx, -ōcis, fierce, warlike.
mītis, -e, mild, gentle.
convocō, -āre, -avī, -ātus, call together.
iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, lie, be prostrate.
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtūrus, pardon, forgive.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, urge on, incite.
noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, harm, injure.
pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, obey.
placeō, -ēre, placuī *or* **placitus sum, placitus,** please, be pleasing.
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, persuade.

307. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hīc rēx mītis eīs quī fīlium suum interficere cupiēbant īgnōscet. 2. Rēgīs uxor marītō persuādēbit ut māiōre cūstōdum numerō cūriam circumdet. 3. Verita est nē inimīcī rēgis nocēre eī cōnārentur. 4. Fortēs et fīdī virī cūstōdibus forī cūriaeque praesunt. 5. Rēgī

pārēbunt; eīs virīs quī ad facinora mala incitant nōn pārēbunt. 6. Corpus prīncipis mortuī in forō iacēbat. 7. Ferōcēs virī quī id facinus fēcērunt statim interficī dēbent. 8. Senātus ut lībertātem cīvitātis servet mox convocābitur. 9. Sine industriā āc probitāte, meī līberī, patriae prōdesse nōn poteritis. 10. Probitās vestra mihi multum placet. - 11. Nōn facile fraudī īgnōscere possum.

II. 1. The shepherds were absent and the fierce wolves approached the flock. 2. Many sheep ran away (fled), many also were killed, few were (left) over. 3. Romulus and Remus were born at Alba and educated among the shepherds. 4. The noble youths assisted the shepherds in many dangers. 5. Therefore many shepherds followed them to the city, where they made their grandfather king. 6. It pleased them to found a new city, and they persuaded many youths to follow them. 7. The new city attained great power in Italy. 8. Many tribes obeyed the Romans, who were fierce in war, gentle in peace. 9. The tribes did not fear that the Romans would do them wrong.

CHAPTER LIV.

Ferō and Compounds of Ferō.

308. Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles of both voices of ferō (p. 252).

Observe that in the forms referred to, the irregularities are confined to the present tense.

What are the irregularities?

The changes which take place in the final consonant of the preposition in the compounds will be learned from the principal parts.

309.　　　　　　VOCABULARY.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander, emperor.

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, lose.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, bring, carry.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus, bring *or* carry together;

sē cōnferre, betake *or* carry one's self, go.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring *or* carry out.

inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, carry *or* bring to, inflict.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, go into, enter.

posteā, *adv.*, afterward.

310.　　　　　　EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fert, ferunt.　2. Fertur, feruntur.　3. Effers, effertis.　4. Tulimus, tulit.　5. Effert, īnfert.　6. Cōnferimus, efferunt.　7. Cōnferēbat, cōnferēbantur.　8. Lātus est, ēlātī sunt.　9. Collātī sunt, illātum erat.　10. Auxilium ferre potest.　11. Dīcit sē auxilium lātūrum esse.

II. 1. We shall carry, he was carried.　2. They collect, they were being brought together.　3. You (sing.) carry, you (pl.) are carried.　4. It was carried out, they were carried in.　5. They had arms.　6. We said that the shepherd would bring sheep.

III. 1. Rōmam mox ut līberī meī ibi ēducentur mē cōnferam.　2. Pastōrēs ferōcēs incitātī spē praemī in urbem sē contulērunt ut rēgem necārent.　3. Pater meus ex urbe multa quae līberīs suīs placēbunt hodiē efferet.　4. Nōnne pater tuus in forum et cūriam ubi māgnum Caesarem necāvērunt ingressus est?　5. Lēgī hodiē librum dē Caesare et cēterīs clārīs Rōmae virīs.　6. Caesar victor

omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant īgnōvit.   7. Cōnābā-
tur victōriā ita ūtī ut prōdesset omnibus, nocēret nēminī.
8. Nōn cupimus eīs quī nōbīs iniūriam intulērunt nocēre.
9. Inimīcī quibus Caesar īgnōvit posteā eum occīdērunt.
10. Deinde multa Rōmānōs ad bellum incitāvērunt.
11. Hōc bellō multī Caesaris mortuī amīcī occīsī sunt.
12. Multī quī superfuērunt omnia sua cum lībertāte patriae
āmīsērunt.   13. Deinde dominō quī imperātor appellātus
est pārēre coāctī sunt.

IV. 1. The gentle woman will pardon the pride of her
husband.   2. Many were present at the death of Caesar,
for he was killed in the senate-house.   3. The senators
fled, and the dead Caesar lay alone.   4. Afterward his
body was carried out into the forum.   5. The camp will be
surrounded with a high wall.   6. The commander is
absent, but he will be present in a short time.   7. He will
call the soldiers together and persuade them to bear the
toil of battle.   8. Urged on by the hope of victory, our
soldiers fought bravely.   9. Were you in command of the
fleet in that battle?   10. I was not in command, but I
persuaded the soldiers to obey the commander.

311.   READING LESSON.

THE DEATH OF SERVIUS TULLIUS.

Servius Tullius duās fīliās habēbat, quārum altera
ferōx altera mītis erat.   Duo quoque Tarquinī Prīscī
fīliī dissimillimīs mōribus erant.   Tullia ferōx Tarquiniō
mītī nūpserat (*had married*), mītis Tullia ferōcī Tarqui-
niō.   Sed mītēs periērunt (*died*): ferōcēs mōrum simili-
tūdō (*likeness*) coniunxit (*united*).   Statim Tarquinius,
quī posteā Tarquinius Superbus appellātus est, ā Tulliā

uxōre incitātus senātum convocāvit ut rēgnum paternum (*paternal*) repeteret. Servius in senātum contendit nē rēgnum āmitteret, sed iussū (*by the order*) Tarquinī gradibus (*steps*) dēiectus (*thrown down*) et domum refugiēns (*fleeing back*) interfectus est. Tullia carpentō (*in a carriage*) in forum contendit, marītum suum ē cūriā ēvocāvit (*called out*) et prīma rēgem salūtāvit (*greeted*). Inde domum rediēns (*returning*) mūliōnem (*driver*) super (*over*) ipsum patris corpus quod in viā iacēns vidēbat carpentum agere iussit. Servius Tullius quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāvit.

———o✦✦✦o———

CHAPTER LV.

Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, and Mālō.

312. Learn the indicative, infinitive, and participles of volō, nōlō, and mālō (p. 250). Observe that the irregularity of ending is confined to the present tense.

313. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Lēgī pārēre vult. 2. Scrībere volumus. 3. Currere nōn vult. 4. Legere māvult. 5. Scīre voluī. 6. Pūgnāre nōlunt. 7. Iubēre volēbat. 8. Fugere nōluit. 9. Dīxit sē nōlle dūcere. 10. Dīcunt sē mālle sequī.

II. 1. You (sing.) wish to move. 2. He is not willing to lead. 3. We prefer to remain. 4. He wished to be strong. 5. They were not willing to follow. 6. He wishes to be present. 7. They will be unwilling to follow. 8. He says that he prefers to run. 9. What does he wish to say? 10. They wish to command.

314.   VOCABULARY.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, terms.

timor, -ōris, m., fear.

aequus, -a, -um, equal, fair.

dūrus, -a, -um, hard.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, accept, receive.

mālō, mālle, māluī, wish rather, prefer.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, return, give back.

volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish.

aut, adv., either, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

315.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mītēs virī saepe ad bellum aut spē lībertātis aut timōre iniūriae incitātī sunt. 2. Sed melius est dūrīs lēgibus pārēre et iniūriam patī quam bellī mala ferre. 3. Imperātor quīdam quī erat mītī animō pācem cum Rōmānīs facere voluit. 4. Māluit post victōriam captīvōs reddere quam urbem vī et armīs occupāre. 5. Neque in urbem exercitū ingredī neque praedam in suam patriam efferre voluit. 6. Dīxit sē velle socium, nōn hostem esse populī Rōmānī. 7. Senātus in cūriam convocātus eī respondit pācem eum cum Rōmānīs habēre nōn posse. 8. Aequīs etiam condiciōnibus pācem accipere Rōmānī nōluērunt. 9. Multa oppida āmissa et multī virī occīsī sunt in eō certāmine. 10. Sed dīxērunt sē nōlle cum hoste in Ītaliā manente pācem habēre. 11. Numquam placuit Rōmānīs hostem armātum in Ītaliā vidēre.

II. 1. The fierce commander was unwilling to pardon the conquered enemy. 2. It is difficult to persuade men not to injure their enemies. 3. The Roman people used to come together in (to) the forum, the senate in (to) the senate-house. 4. Much grain was brought together from

the fields and carried to the towns.   5. The sixth Roman king was slain and lay dead in the road.   6. In the earliest (first) times the Romans were under the power of kings.   7. Afterward they could not bear the pride of Tarquin.   8. The citizens preferred to have a free state. 9. We do not wish (are unwilling) to be slaves; we wish to be free.   10. We do not doubt that the conditions of peace are very hard.

———•o°°°o•———

CHAPTER LVI.

Irregular Verbs Eō and Fīō.

Two Datives.

316. Learn the indicative, the infinitives, and the participles of **eō** and **fīō** (p. 253).

Notice that *i*, the stem of **eō**, is changed to *e* in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, and in the present participle except in the nominative singular.

Fīō is used as the passive of **faciō**.

317.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Domum īmus.   2. In urbem ībunt.   3. Ignis fit. 4. In silvam iit.   5. Clārus fīēs.   6. Proelium factum erat.   7. Māgnus fierī voluit.   8. Nōluimus īre.   9. Ierant in īnsulam.   10. Ierimus in castra.   11. Num poētae fīēmus ?   12. Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit.

II. 1. We shall go, you have gone to the town.   2. He preferred to go.   3. He says that his father has gone

4. He has become famous. 5. Do you wish to become famous? 6. We do not wish to become famous. 7. The messenger said they were about to go. 8. My brother has become a soldier. 9. The boys will become men.

318.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Porsenna Tarquiniō auxiliō erat,** *Porsenna was a help to Tarquin.*
2. **Equitēs auxiliō nōbīs missī sunt,** *the horsemen were sent as a help to us.*

Observe that in each sentence one of the datives may be translated by *for,* and the other by *to.* The one translated by *for* is called the dative of *purpose.* The dative of purpose is frequently better rendered as a predicate noun (sometimes with *as*) than by *for.*

319. RULE. — *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs.*

320.   VOCABULARY.

beneficium, -ī, *n.,* kind act, favor.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, preserve.

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus, go.

exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, go out *or* away.

fīō, fierī, factus, be made, be done, become.

intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus, comprehend, understand.

pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), itūrus, perish, die.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, return, go back.

trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, cross, cross over.

321.   EXERCISES.

1. 1. Iste liber mihi māgnae voluptātī fuit. Paucīs diēbus eum reddam. 2. Multī virī beneficia cōnferre

quam accipere mālunt.   3. Hīc puer poēta fierī vult; sed dīcunt poētam nāscī, nōn fierī.   4. Pater meus proximō mēnse in Ītaliam ībit, et comitem mē capiet.   5. Dīcit sē nōlle ante tertium mēnsem redīre.   6. Multa ad amīcōs ab eā clārā terrā efferēmus.   7. Trānsibitne in Siciliam ubi Cyclōpēs habitābant?   8. Ulixēs rediēns ā Trōiā cum duodecim comitibus in eam īnsulam vēnit.   9. Nōnnūllōs ex comitibus suīs ibi āmīsit; summā vī iactī in terram ā Polyphēmō periērunt.   10. Inveniēs aliō locō[1] quō modō Ulixēs cēterōs cōnservāverit.   11. Posteā multī Graecī domō exiērunt et in īnsulā Siciliā urbēs condidērunt.   12. Nōn intellegō quārē studuerint domō exīre.

II. 1. Great fear seized the people that the city would be destroyed.   2. Our commander wishes either to accept peace on fair conditions or to carry on war.   3. Hard conditions will never be accepted; therefore a gentle spirit will be profitable to you.   4. My brother entered a ship and was carried by the river to the sea.   5. Next he crossed over to Greece to be educated at Athens.   6. There many wrongs were inflicted upon him, but he never lost hope.   7. Afterward he returned to Italy, where he wishes to remain.   8. The forces of Porsenna were a great help to King Tarquin.   9. By your kind acts we have been made your friends instead of (out of) enemies.   10. Now the work has been done; we will go out to the games.

---

[1] With locus and a few other words, the place in which is expressed by the simple abl. without in.

322.   READING LESSON.

TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS.

Tarquinius Superbus rēgnum scelestē (*wickedly*) occu-
pāvit, tamen (*yet*) bellō fortis et ācer Latīnōs Sabīnōsque
superāvit.   Urbem Gabiōs (*Gabii*) in potestātem suam
fraude Sextī fīlī redēgit (*reduced*).   Sextus graviter (*deeply*)
dolēbat illam urbem expūgnārī nōn posse.   Itaque Ga-
biōs iit patris in sē saevitiam (*cruelty*) conquerēns
(*lamenting*), ubi ā cīvibus benīgnē (*kindly*) exceptus (*re-
ceived*) atque paulō post dux bellī factus est.   Tum ad
patrem nūntium fidēlem (*faithful*) mīsit quī dē rēbus
factīs nārrāret et patrem interrogāret quid fierī iubēret.
Pater nūntiō nihil respondit, sed in hortum iit, ibique
cum nūntiō ambulāns (*walking*) altissima papāverum (*of
poppies*) capita baculō (*staff*) quod manū ferēbat dēcussit
(*struck off*).   Nūntius tandem dēfessus Gabiōs rediit, et
Sextō nūntiāvit nihil sibi ā patre respōnsum esse.   Tum
Sextō interrogāntī quid pater fēcisset, dē hortō et papā-
verum capitibus nārrāvit.   Sextus facile intellēxit quid
pater fierī iubēret.   Prīncipēs cīvitātis interfēcit patrīque
urbem quam bellō expūgnāre nōn potuerat fraude trādidit
(*delivered*).

CHAPTER LVII.

Derivation and Composition of Words.

323.   Latin words, like English words, are sometimes
simple, that is, made of one part; and sometimes com-
pound, that is, made of two or more parts, each of which

has a distinct meaning. Many compound words occur in this book, some of which are repeated in the following lists for comparison and further study.

sum,	*I am.*
ab-sum,	*I am away (from), I am absent.*
ad-sum,	*I am at or near* (the person or thing in question), *I am present.*
prae-sum,	*I am before, am in front of, am present, am at the head of* (as a leader is in front of the army), *I command.*
prō-sum,	*I am for* (a person or thing), *I help, am advantageous.*
super-sum,	*I am over, I am left over, I survive.*
pos-sum,	(from **pot** [**ĭs**], *able,* and **sum**) *I am able, I can.*
dō,	*I give.*
red-dō,	*I give back, return.*
con-dō,	*I (give or) put together, I found* (a city).
prō-dō,	*I (give forth), betray.*
ferō,	*I bear, carry, bring.*
cōn-ferō,	*I carry or bring together* (then, because when two or more things are brought together one cannot help seeing their points of resemblance or difference, *I compare*).
ef-ferō,	(for **ec** [*i.e.* **ex**] **-ferō**), *I bear or carry out.*
in-ferō,	*I bear or bring in or against.*
prae-ferō,	*I bear or carry or put before, I prefer.*
eō,	*I go.*
ab-eō,	*I go away.*
ex-eō,	*I go out.*
red-eō,	*I go back, I return.*
capĭō,	*I take.*
ac-cipĭō,	(for **ad-capĭō**), *I take to* (myself), *I receive, accept.*
teneō,	*I hold.*
ob-tĭneō,	*I hold* (against opposition), *I maintain.*
re-tĭneō,	*I hold back, I retain.*

The prefixes in the compounds given above are of great use in Latin word-making. Learn their meanings.

Notice that when the stem of a verb compounded with one of these prefixes contains a short *a* or *e*, that vowel is changed to short *i* (*e.g.* **capiō**, **ac-cipiō**, **teneō**, **ob-tineō**). Notice also that the final consonant of the prefix is sometimes changed to suit the initial consonant of the word with which it is used (*e.g.* **ef-ferō** for **ec-ferō**, **ac-cipiō** for **ad-cipiō**).

NOTE. — There are other ways of making compounds, as **iūs-iūrandum**, *oath*, from **iūs**, *right, law*, and **iūrandum**, the gerundive of the verb **iūrō**, *to swear*. The composition of such words is explained, as they occur, in the special vocabularies from this point to the end of the book.

324. In the compound words given above, each part retains the meaning it has as a separate word. So, for instance, **eō** is a verb, *go*, and **ex-eō** is also a verb, *go out*. But words are made from other words by *derivation*, as well as by *composition*. Notice **amō**, *love*, **amīcus**, *friendly* or *friend*, **amīcitia**, *friendship*. Here **amō** is a verb, **amīcus** an adjective (used also as a noun), and **amīcitia** a noun. Yet all evidently belong together in meaning, and all contain the root **am-**.

325. Examine the following : —

imperō (stem **imperā-**), *I command*.

imperātor (**-ōris**, *m.*), *commander, general.*

vincō (stem **vic-**), *I conquer*

victor (**-ōris**, *m.*), *conqueror, victor.*

326. RULE. — *The ending -tor added to verb stems forms masculine nouns denoting the* **agent** *or* **doer** *of an action.*

NOTE.—The verb stem is most easily found for this purpose by removing the ending of the perf. pass. part., or supine. If the perf. pass. part. of the verb ends in *-sus*, the ending of the noun is *-sor* instead of *-tor;* as, **dēfendō** (perf. pass. part. **dēfēnsus**), *defend*, **dēfēnsor**, *defender*. Verb stems are sometimes changed in the perf. pass. part. very much as noun stems of the third declension are changed when the nominative ending is added (**54. 5; 58**).

327. Examine the following: —

prō-dō, *I betray.*   **prōdi-tiō** (*-ōnis, f.*), *betrayal, treason.*

ad-veniō (supine **adventum**),   **adventus** (*-ūs, m.*), *arrival.* *I come to, arrive.*

328. RULE. — *The endings -tiō and -tus, added to verb stems, form abstract nouns expressing action.*

NOTE.—The endings *-iō* (*-ōnis*, f.) and *-tūra* (*-ae*, f.) are used in the same way. If the perf. pass. part. of the verb ends in *-sus*, the endings are *-siō, -sus,* and *-sūra;* as, **ūtor** (p.p. **ūsus**), *I use,* **ūsus** *ūs,* m.), *use.*

329. Examine the following:—

amīcus (stem **amīco-**), *friend.*   **amīci-tia** (*-ae, f.*), *friendship.*

sapiēns (stem **sapient-**), *wise.*   **sapient-ia** (*-ae, f.*), *wisdom.*

līber (stem **lībero-**), *free.*   **līber-tās** (*-tātis, f.*), *freedom.*

vir (stem **viro-**), *man.*   **vir-tūs** (*-tūtis, f.*), *manliness, virtue, courage.*

fortis (stem **forti-**), *brave.*   **forti-tūdō** (*-tūdinis, f.*), *bravery.*

330. RULE.— *The endings -ia, -tia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, added to adjective and noun stems, form feminine abstract nouns expressing quality.*

NOTE. — A final *o* of the stem is regularly changed to *i* before these endings (as **amīco-, amīcitia**). In **virtūs**, formed from the stem *viro-*, the *o* is dropped. Occasionally the stem is slightly changed in some other way, as in **facultās**, *ability*, from stem *facili-* of **facilis**, *easy.*

331. Adjectives are formed in Latin as in English from nouns (nominal adjectives) and from verbs (verbal adjectives). So few derived adjectives are used in this book that only a few endings can be given here.

The endings *-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus,* added to noun stems minus their final vowel, form adjectives with the sense of *belonging to;* as, Rōma, *Rome,* Rōmānus, *Roman;* alius, *another,* aliēnus, *belonging to another* or *to others, foreign.*

The endings *-ilis* and *-bilis* added to verb stems form adjectives denoting passive qualities; as, faciō, *do,* facilis, (*doable*), *easy;* ūtor, *use,* ūtilis, *useful;* amō, *love,* amābilis, *lovable.*

332. Verbs are sometimes derived from noun or adjective stems; as līberō, *set free,* from the stem of līber, *free;*—sometimes from verb stems. Most verbs of the first conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *a* or *o* (first or second declension), and many verbs of the fourth conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *i* (third declension). Some verbs of the second and third conjugations, also, are formed from noun and adjective stems.

———o◦❀◦o———

CHAPTER LVIII.

Imperative Constructions.

Wishes.

333. Learn the present imperative of amō, habeō, dūcō, audiō, nōlō.

334. Imperative constructions include all kinds of commands, requests, and permissions. The following are the most common:—

POSITIVE.	NEGATIVE.
1. **habeāmus,** *let us have.*	**nē habeāmus,** *let us not have.*

2. { **habē,** *have,* or **habeās,** *you (one) must have.* } { **nōlī habēre** or **nē habeās** or **nē habueris** } *do not have.*

3. { **habeat** or **habuerit** } *let him have,* or *he shall have.* { **nē habeat** or **nē habuerit** } *let him not have,* or *he shall not have.*

335. Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person, and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used, except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people.*

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with **nē.**

3. Notice that in imperative sentences there is no difference in the translation between the present and the perfect subjunctive.

4. Notice that **nē** is the negative in imperative sentences.

336.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

(**Utinam**) **bonus sīs,** *may you be good.*
Utinam bonus essēs, *would you were good.*

Utinam bonus fuissēs, *would you had been good.*
(Utinam) nē malus sīs, *may you not be bad.*
(Utinam) nē malus essēs, *would you were not bad.*
(Utinam) nē malus fuissēs, *would you had not been bad.*

Notice that *utinam* is sometimes translated, and sometimes merely shows that the sentence in which it occurs is a wish. Notice, also, that *utinam* may usually be omitted in Latin. Notice that when the wish refers to the future the present subjunctive, when it refers to the present the imperfect, and when it refers to the past the pluperfect, is used. When the wish refers to the present or past, it is unfulfilled. Compare the subjunctive in conditions, **343–346.** Observe that the negative is *nē.*

337. RULE. — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by* **utinam.** *The negative is* **nē.** *Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

338.   VOCABULARY.

ōdium, -ī, *n.*, hatred.
necēsse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
admīror, -ārī, -mīrātus [**ad** and **mīror**], wonder at, admire.
āvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [**ā** *and* **vertō**], turn from *or* away.
loquor, -ī, locūtus, talk, say.

trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus [**trans + dō**], give over *or* up, surrender.
vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
super, *prep. (with acc. and abl.),* over.
utinam, O that, would that.

339.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Māgna vōx super mare vēnit; "Ite, fīliī Graecōrum, līberāte patriam, līberāte uxōrēs vestrās." 2. Lacedaemoniī arma trādere ā Xerxe iūssī respondērunt;

"Venī et cape." 3. Haec, ventī, rēgī vestrō dīcite, nōn illī sed mihi imperium maris datum est. 4. Utinam Graecī pulchram urbem Trōiam nē dēlēvissent. 5. Nē nunc diūtius maneātis, puerī; aliō tempore dē hāc rē loquar. 6. Nē omnibus quae audīmus fidem habeāmus. 7. Utinam omnēs beneficia cōnferre magis quam accipere optārent. 8. Nōlīte trānsīre illum hortum; via pūblica dūcit in scholam. 9. Nē quisquam semper in timōre sit; omnibus necēsse est morī. 10. Nunc intellegō quid in hōc virō admīrēris. 11. Neque timōre neque ōdiō ā probitāte āvertitur. 12. Clārum sit nōmen ēius. 13. Nōnne in urbem īre parās? Ego tēcum ībō. Id tibi voluptātī erit; laetum ibi diem habeāmus. 14. In urbem hodiē nōn ībō; nunc valē. 15. Imperātor mītem vultum in captīvōs vertēns, "nē timeātis" dīxit.

II. 1. Give me back what you have taken. 2. My friend went out (as) a messenger to the army and returned home seriously wounded. 3. This kind of stone is so hard that we cannot use it. 4. Let us try to obtain power on fair conditions. 5. We wish to preserve our liberty rather than to obey a king. 6. Many acts of kindness will be done by you and me. 7. So spoke the brave soldier: "We will either conquer or perish." 8. Would that they had overcome the enemy. 9. Do not turn away your face from me. 10. May your life be long and happy.
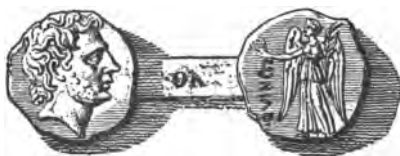
ROMAN COIN.

CHAPTER LIX.

Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive; Conditional Sentences.

340. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of dūcō.

341.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī adest, laetī sumus, *if he is present, we are glad.*

Sī aderat, laetī erāmus, *if he was present, we were glad.*

Sī aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

Sī adfuit, laetī fuimus, *if he was (has been) present, we were (have been) glad.*

Notice that each sentence consists of two clauses, — a condition introduced by *sī* (if), and a conclusion. The truth of the conclusion depends upon the truth of the condition. Such sentences are called *conditional sentences.*

Notice that in the sentences given above nothing is implied as to the truth of the assertions. It is simply stated that *if* the condition is (was, shall be) true, the conclusion is (was, shall be) true. Such conditions are called *simple conditions.* Notice the mood of the verbs.

Notice that in simple future conditions the future tense is used when in English we use the present.

NOTE. — Conditions referring to action completed in past time are in the pluperfect; as **sī adfuerat,** *if he had (at some previous time) been present.* But these do not often occur.

Sometimes a future conclusion depends upon a condition which will already belong to past time when the conclusion shall or may become true; as, *If I come, I shall go back.* I evidently cannot go back until after I have come; the condition therefore refers to the past; but the whole sentence refers to the future, therefore the condition must refer to the past and the future at once, *i.e.,* must be in the future perfect tense, **sī vēnerō, redībō.**

342. RULE. — *In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

343.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

Sī adsit, laetī sīmus, *if he should be present, we should be glad.*

Notice that these sentences refer to the future. The second differs from the first only in being *less vivid*, implying that the speaker is in doubt, or is unwilling to make a plain, simple statement. Notice the moods and tenses. Compare **336, 337**.

344. RULE. — *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

NOTE. — The form of the less vivid condition corresponding to the future perfect indicative of the simple more vivid condition (see **341**, note) is the perfect subjunctive, **sī vēnerim, redeam,** *if I should come (have come), I should go back.*

345.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī adesset, laetī essēmus, *if he were present, we should be glad.*

Sī adfuisset, laetī fuissēmus, *if he had been present, we should have been glad.*

Notice that in these sentences the condition is supposed to be untrue. Such conditions are called *conditions contrary to fact.* Notice the mood and the tenses of the verbs. Compare **336, 337**.

346. RULE. — *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

NOTE.—The rules for wishes and conditions, with the exception of simple conditions, may be embodied in one rule:—

Wishes and conditions which may be fulfilled take the present subjunctive, those which are not fulfilled take the imperfect subjunctive, those which were not fulfilled take the pluperfect subjunctive.

347.   VOCABULARY.

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.

Epamīnōndās, -ae, *m.*, Epaminondas.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate.

Mīcythus, -ī, *m.*, Micythus.

Thēbae, -ārum, *f.*, Thebes.

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [con *and* rumpō], destroy, corrupt, bribe.

ostendo, -ere, -dī, -tus (stretch out before), show.

prōdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus [prō *and* dō], give up, betray.

satis, *adv.*, enough.

nam, *conj.*, for.

nisi, *conj.* [nē *and* sī], if not, unless.

sī, *conj.*, if.

sin, *conj.* [sī, nē], but if.

348.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī dē lūdīs loquāris, studeāmus audīre. 2. Sī Graecī apud Thermopylās arma trādidissent, num cōnservātī essent? 3. Sī intellegerem, tibi nārrārem. 4. Utinam coāctī essent aut iter vertere aut domum redīre. 5. Rēx Persārum Thēbās lēgātum māgnā cum pecūniā mīsit ut Epamīnōndam corrumperet. 6. Lēgātus Thēbās vēnit et Mīcythum, cui Epamīnōndās erat amīcus, pecūniā corrūpit et eī persuāsit ut causam adventūs Epamīnōndae ostenderet. 7. Sed hīc dīxit: "Sī ea vīs quae patriae meae sunt ūtilia, aurum ferre nōn necēsse est. Sīn autem nocentia[1] vīs nōn satis aurī habēs. 8. Nam sī omne dominī tuī aurum dare possīs, nōn prōdam patriam meam. 9. Nunc exī ex hāc urbe. Sī mē corrumpere nōn potuistī,

---

[1] Participle of **noceō**, used as a noun.

alium corrūpistī. 10. Et tū, Micythe, aurum huīc redde;
nisi id statim fēceris, ego tē trādam magistrātuī."

II. 1. The man would not have died if he had not been
seriously wounded. 2. If all (the things) which I commanded have been done, I will go home. 3. Unless the
horsemen can cross the river they will perish. 4. Will
you do me a favor? 5. That will be a great pleasure to
me. 6. Talk with this old man, if you please (are willing).
7. If you admired this woman, you would not turn your
face away from her. 8. Would that all men understood
that love is better than hatred, peace than war!
9. Epaminondas has been dead many years, but even now
we admire his honesty. 10. A tower has been built over
the town on a high hill. 11. If the tower had not been
built, we should not have seen the enemy approaching.

349. READING LESSON.

THE BEGINNING OF THE REPUBLIC.

Posteā per eundem Sextum quī Gabiōs in potestātem
redēgerat (*reduced*) Tarquinius Superbus rēgnum āmīsit.
Is enim Lucrētiae (*Lucretia*), Tarquinī Collātīnī uxōrī,
vim (*violence*) attulit (*offered*), quae postquam (*after*) virō
et patrī rem nārrāverat cultrō (*knife*) sē interfēcit. Illī
statim cōnsilium capiunt ut rēgibus fīnem faciant. Tarquiniō Rōmam redeuntī clausae (*closed*) sunt portae et
exsilium (*exile*) indictum. Is quattuor et vīgintī annōs
rēgnāverat. Septem fuērunt rēgēs Rōmānī, quī ducentōs
et trēs et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāvērunt. Nisi superbī
et scelerātī (*wicked*) fuissent. Tarquiniī fortasse (*perhaps*)
multōs annōs rēgnum obtinuissent, fortasse etiam aliōs
post eōs rēgēs Rōmānī creāvissent. Sed tantum ōdium

in Tarquiniōs et in nōmen rēgium (*of king*) ē Sextī faci-
nore ortum (*arose*) est ut novīs lēgibus et magistrātibus
rem pūblicam cōnstituere (*establish*) dēcernerētur.   Itaque
prō (*instead of*) ūnō rēge duo cōnsulēs creātī sunt quī
summam potestātem obtinērent.   Prīmī cōnsulēs Lūcius
Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātīnus, Lucrētiae marītus,
erant.

CHAPTER LX.

Fourth Conjugation : Subjunctive Active and Passive.

Clauses with Cum.

350.   Learn the subjunctive active and passive of **audiō.**

351.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Cum cīvitās bellum indīcit, ducēs creantur, *when the state
declares war, leaders are chosen.*

Cum haec legēs, aderō, *when you read* (i.e. *shall read*) *this, I
shall be present.*

Oppidum vocant, cum silvās mūniērunt, *they call it a town,
when they have fortified the woods.*

Cum vēneris, vidēbis, *when you come* (i.e. *shall have come*),
you will see.

Observe the mood and tenses.

352.   RULE. — ***Cum*** *meaning* when (***cum temporal***)
takes the indicative to define a time.

353.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum esset cōnsul in castrīs, lēgātī vēnērunt, *when the consul
was in camp, envoys came.*

cōnsulī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est,
when that was (i.e. *had been*) *announced to the consul, he set out
from the city.*

354. RULE. — *With* **cum** *meaning* when *the subjunctive
is used in the imperfect and pluperfect, the indicative in the
other tenses.*

NOTE. — The indicative is used with **cum** when a *date* is given, the
subjunctive when a *situation* or *circumstance* is given involving the idea
of time. Generally dates are given in primary tenses, and therefore
cum with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative is rare. When a
time is *described*, the tenses used are naturally secondary, hence the
use of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **cum** in narrative.

355.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Cum haec ita sint, bene est, *since these things are so, it is well.*

Cum dēfessus essem, domī manēbam, *since I was tired, I
stayed at home.*

Cum adessem, mē nōn vīdistī, *although I was present, you did
not see me.*

Hōc cum audierim, nōn sciō, *although I have heard this, I do
not know it.*

356. RULE. — *Cum causal and concessive (meaning*
since *and* although*) takes the subjunctive in all tenses.*

357.   VOCABULARY.

dolus, -ī, *m.,* conceit, cunning.

glōria, -ae, *f.,* glory, fame.

prūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**prūdent-,**
for **prōvident- + ia**], pru-
dence, foresight.

Themistoclēs, -is, *m.,* Themis-
tocles.

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, close.

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**con**
and **statuō**], set, establish,
decide.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus
[**dis** *and* **cēdō**], withdraw.

orior, -īrī, ortus, rise, begin.

cum, *conj.,* when, since, although.

358.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. Tarquinius cum ad urbem vēnit, clausae erant portae. 2. Cum ōdium in sē ortum esset, ad Porsennam fūgit. 3. Micythus cum corruptus esset, magistrātuī nōn traditus est, nam aurum reddidit. 4. Sī tū Epamīnōndās fuissēs num accēpissēs aurum lēgātī et prōdidissēs tuam patriam? 5. Nē magistrātus timōre ōdī ab aequitāte āvertātur. 6. Xerxēs cum Thermopylās expūgnāvisset, Athēnīs appropinquāvit, eāsque incendiō dēlēvit. 7. Graecī cum ingentem classem Persārum timērent, impetum eōrum in angustō marī nōn exspectāre sed discēdere cōnstituērunt. 8. Themistoclēs cum hōc intellēxisset, Xerxem dolō mōvit ut statim in Graecōs impetum faceret. 9. Nocte ūnum ē servīs suīs ad eum mīsit ut eī haec ostenderet: "Graecī fugere volunt; sī discēsserint, cum mągnō labōre fīnem bellī faciēs; sī in eōs statim impetum faciās, brevī tempore omnēs vincās." 10. Xerxēs dolum nōn timēns statim impetum facere cōnstituit. 11. Sed cum in angustō marī māgnus numerus nāvium Persīs nōn prōdesset, sed nocēret, classī clādēs parāta est. 12. Ducentae nāvēs eōrum dēlētae sunt. Xerxēs statim in patriam rediit. 13. Ita ūnīus virī prūdentiā Graecia līberāta et glōria Athēniēnsium apud omnēs populōs aucta est.

II. 1. If you return the gold, all will admire your honesty. 2. When we are talking we do not hear the words of others. 3. Now it is necessary to wait for assistance, unless we are willing to turn our route and hasten to the river. 4. When our friends have gone away the gates will be closed. 5. Would that I had been at Thebes with Epaminondas! 6. But if I cannot be

the friend of Epaminondas, I can admire his wisdom. 7. Although he attained the greatest glory in (of) war, he loved peace. 8. When his friends asked why he loved peace, he replied that peace brought all good things to men. 9. Although I knew my friend was at home, the maid said he was absent. 10. So when my friend came to the door of my house, I called with a loud voice, "I am not at home."

359. READING LESSON.

THE TRICK OF BRUTUS.

Lūcius Jūnius Brūtus, sorōris Tarquinī fīlius, cum timēret nē ā rēge occīderētur, stultitiam (*stupidity*) finxit (*feigned*), unde Brūtus (*Dull*) appellātus est. Hīc Delphōs (*to Delphi*) profectus est cum Tarquinī fīliīs, quōs pater ad deum Apollinem (*Apollo*) dōna ferentēs mīserat. Cum omnia fēcissent quae sibi ā rēge imperāta (*ordered*) erant, iuvenēs Apollinem cōnsuluērunt (*asked, consulted*) quis ex ipsīs Rōmae rēgnātūrus esset. Respōnsum est eum Rōmae summam potestātem habitūrum esse quī prīmus mātrem osculātus esset (*should kiss*). Tum Brūtus terram osculātus est (*kissed*), commūnem (*common*) omnium mortālium (*mortals*) mātrem. Ille posteā prīmus Rōmānōrum cōnsul creātus est.

WRITING MATERIALS.

CHAPTER LXI.

Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.

Indirect Discourse.

360. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of possum, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fīō, and ferō.

Review the rules for simple indirect discourse (p. 123).

361. VOCABULARY.

sermō, -ōnis, *f.*, talk.

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [prō, dit-, *for* dat- *of* dō, + ĭō], treason, treachery.

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [con *and* iaciō], throw together, cast.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, condemn.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [dē *and* ferō], carry away, report.

dīrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, direct.

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex *and* aestimō], think.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find out.

362. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cum lēgātus aurum dēferre vellet, Epamīnōndās eum retinēre nōn cōnātus est. 2. Retineat lēgātus pecūniam et domum redeat. 3. Dīcitur lēgātus Athēnās cursum suum dīrēxisse. 4. Sī Epamīnōndam corrumpere cōnēris magistrātuī tē trādat. 5. Nam sī rēgnum eī dēs, patriam nōn prōdat. 6. Exīstimō Micythum aurō corruptum esse. 7. Cum haec sermō magistrātuī dēlāta esset, in carcerem Micythum coniēcit. 8. Sī nōn mortuus esset, prōditiōnis[1] damnātus esset et interfectus esset.

---

[1] Verbs of condemning and accusing take the genitive of the crime.

9. Graecī cum in angustō marī pūgnāre nōllent, discēdere cōnstituērunt. 10. Cum sē prōditōs esse repperissent, cūr nōn discēssērunt? 11. Cum sōl ortus esset, repperē-runt multitūdine nāvium sē clausōs esse. 12. Exīstimā-mus Athēniēnsēs dolō Themistoclis māgnam glōriam cōnsecūtōs esse.

II. 1. The messenger reported that a tower had been built. 2. If he could write, he would write that our friend is dead. 3. Even if the Latins had been unwilling to obey the Romans, they could not have contended (would not have been able to contend) long with them. 4. The story about Epaminondas shows that he had great foresight. 5. For if he had not been prudent, many citizens would have been corrupted. 6. If you should go to Thebes now, you would see a small town, not a large city. 7. Since these things are so, let us go home. 8. The soldier remained fighting bravely, although he knew that he should be killed. 9. If this should not be done, we should wish to go out from the city.

363. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. DIRECT. **Sī quid vīs, cūr nōn venīs ad mē?** *If you want anything, why do you not come to me?*

  INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus respondet, sī quid velīs, cūr nōn veniās ad sē,** *your friend replies, if you want anything, why don't you come to him.*

  (secondary tense). **Senex respondit, sī quid puer vellet, cūr nōn venīret ad sē,** *the old man replied, if the boy wanted anything, why did he not come to him.*

2. DIRECT. **Venī sī vīs,** *come, if you wish.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus dīcit, veniās sī vellīs,** *your friend says (that) you may come if you wish.*

(secondary tense). **Senex dīxit puer venīret sī vellet,** *the old man said (that) the boy might come if he wished.*

3. DIRECT. **Sī aderat Horātius, puer bene fēcit,** *If Horace was present, the boy did well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō sī adfuerit Horātius bene puerum fēcisse,** *I say that if Horace was present, the boy did well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxī sī adfuisset Horātius bene puerum fēcisse,** *I said that if Horace was present, the boy did well* (at some time before I said it).

4. DIRECT. **Cum Horātius adest, puer bene facit,** *when Horace is present, the boy does well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō cum Horātius adsit bene puerum facere,** *I say that when Horace is present, the boy does well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxī cum Horātius adesset bene puerum facere,** *I said that when Horace was present, the boy did well.*

Notice the moods. Notice also how the tenses differ in the different sentences. Observe that the first and second persons of the Direct Discourse are usually changed (in Latin as in English) to the third person in the Indirect Discourse.

364. RULE.—*In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.*

365. RULE.—*If the verb of saying, etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.*

NOTE. — As the subjunctive lacks the future and future perfect tenses, the future indicative of the Direct Discourse is represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, and the future perfect indicative by the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. So **sī aderō, bene erit,** *if I am* (i.e. *shall be*) *present, it will be well,* becomes, if quoted indirectly, **dīcit sī adsit, bene futūrum esse,** *he says that if he is present, it will be well,* or (using a secondary tense) **dīxit sī adesset, bene futūrum esse.**

366. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lēgātus exīstimāvit, cum aurum dēferre vellet, Epamīnōndam sē retinēre cōnātūrum esse. 2. Epamī-nōndās dīxit lēgātus pecūniam retinēret et domum redīret. 3. Scīmus lēgātum sī Epamīnōndam corrumpere cōnātus sit, magistrātuī trāditum esse. 4. Nam dīxit, sī rēgnum sibi darēs, sē patriam nōn prōditūrum esse. 5. Dīcitur magistrātum, cum haec sermō eī dēlāta sit, in carcerem Micythum coniēcisse. 6. Scīvit, sī prōditiōnis damnātus esset, sē interfectum īrī. 7. Nūntiātum est Graecōs, cum in angustō marī pūgnāre nōllent, discēdere cōnstituisse. 8. Audīvistī quārē, cum sē prōditōs esse repperissent, nōn discēssissent.

II. 1. The general thought that the soldiers could conquer if they wished. 2. It was reported that although the soldiers were brave they had been defeated. 3. We know that, even if the Latins had been unwilling to obey the Romans, they could not have contended long with them. 4. He said that since these things were so, they must (cf. I. 2) go home. 5. The general asked the messenger why he had come if he wished to report nothing. 6. The messenger reported that, when the camp was taken, the enemy fled. 7. We have read that since the Tarquins were proud they lost the royal power. 8. We hear that,

when Tarquin the Proud had reigned forty-three years, the Romans established the state with new magistrates. 9. The old king said that, if his son was killed, he did not wish to reign longer.   10. The guard said that, when our friends had gone away, the gates would be closed.

367.   READING LESSON.
EARLY TROUBLES OF THE REPUBLIC.

Nova lībertās prōditiōne paene (*almost*) āmissa est. Erant enim nōnnūllī iuvenēs Rōmānī, Tarquiniōrum amīcī, quī cōnsilium cēpērunt ut nocte in urbem rēgēs reciperent (*receive*). Sermōnem eōrum servus quīdam audīvit, ad cōnsulēs rem dētulit.   Cum scrīptae ad Tarquinium līterrae (*a letter*) manifestum (*evident*) facinus fēcissent iuvenēs in vincula (*chains*) coniectī, deinde damnātī et interfectī sunt.   In eīs ipsīus Brūtī fīliī erant; tamen ille et damnāvit eōs et praesēns (*present*) mortem eōrum vīdit.   Paulō post Tarquinius bellō apertō (*open*) rēgnum recuperāre (*recover*) voluit.   Equitibus praeerat fīlius ēius; quī cum Brūtum cōnsulem cum equitibus Rōmānīs contrā sē venientem vīdisset, equum calcāribus (*spurs*) concitātum (*urged on*) in eum dīrēxit.   Brūtus quoque equum concitāvit, atque tantā vī concurrērunt (*ran together*) ut ambō (*both*) hastā (*spear*) trānsfīxī (*pierced*) ceciderint (*fell*).   Fugātus est tamen Tarquinius.   Posteā autem Porsennam, Etrūriae rēgem, socium sibi coniunxit (*joined*), quī māgnō exercitū Rōmam oppūgnāvit, sed tandem fortitūdine Rōmānōrum territus bellō .fīnem fēcit.   Latīnōs quoque cum Tarquinium in rēgnum restituere cōnārentur Rōmānī māgnā clāde apud lacum (*lake*) Rēgillum (*Regillus*) vīcērunt.   Tum Tarquinius Cūmās (*Cumae*) sē contulit, ubi mortuus est.

CHAPTER LXII.

Participles. (*Review.*)

Ablative Absolute.

368. Review the participles and their declensions (p. 128).

369.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Duce vocante mīlitēs conveniunt,**	*the leader calling,* *when the leader calls,* *at the call of the leader,*	*the soldiers assemble.*
2. **Rōmulus urbe conditā rēx factus est,**	*the city having been founded,* *when (or after) the city was founded,* *since the city was founded,* *having founded the city,*	*Romulus became king.*
3. **Equitibus fugientibus peditēs interfectī sunt,**	*the horsemen fleeing,* *when the horsemen fled,* *since the horsemen fled,* *on account of the flight of the horsemen,*	*the foot-soldiers were slain.*
4. **Hōc factō conveniēmus,**	*this having been done,* *when this has been done,* *after doing this,*	*we shall assemble.*
5. **Eō duce hostēs vīcistis,**	*he being leader,* *when he was leader,* *under his leadership,* *with him as leader,*	*you conquered the enemy.*

6. **Exercitū incolumī ducem laudābimus,**

{ *the army being safe,*
since the army is safe,
if the army is safe, }

} *we shall praise the general.*

Notice that in 1, 2, 3, and 4 a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement with it are put in the ablative to designate the time or circumstances of the action expressed by the main verb. The place of the participle may be taken by a noun (*duce* in 5) or an adjective (*incolumī* in 6). The ablative used in this way is called the *ablative absolute.*

370. RULE. — *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstances of an action.*

371. In the use of the ablative absolute the following things are to be observed : —

1. The noun in the ablative is not the same as the subject or object of the main verb. If we wish to say in Latin, *the leader fled, having been defeated,* we must say **dux victus fūgit,** for *leader* is the subject of *fled,* therefore *dux* must be the subject of *fūgit,* and the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative ; then *having been defeated* modifies *leader,* therefore *victus* must modify *dux,* and must therefore be in the same case as *dux,* that is, in the nominative.

2. The ablative absolute may be translated in various ways ; as (*a*), by the English absolute construction (**urbe conditā,** *the city having been founded*) ; (*b*), by a temporal clause (**urbe conditā,** *when the city was founded*) ; (*c*), by a concessive clause (**urbe conditā,** *although the city had been founded*) ; (*d*), by a condition (**urbe conditā,** *if the city was founded*) ; (*e*), by various expressions suited to the sentence in which the ablative absolute stands (so **urbe conditā** *after the foundation of the city*).

3. The ablative absolute is often used in Latin where an independent coördinate verb would be used in English ; as,

Rōmulus urbe conditā rēx factus est, *Romulus founded the city and became king.*

4. In Latin there is no perfect active participle. If, therefore, we wish to say in Latin, *Romulus, having founded the city, became king,* we cannot use, as in English, a participle in agreement with Romulus, but instead, **Rōmulus urbe conditā rēx factus est.** The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a clause with **cum**; as **Rōmulus cum urbem condidisset, rēx factus est.** Deponent verbs have the perfect participle, and therefore offer no difficulty in translation. Thus, *Romulus having set out from Alba, came to the Tiber,* can be translated, **Rōmulus Albā profectus ad Tiberim vēnit.**

5. In Latin there is no present passive participle and no future passive participle. When an English sentence contains one of these participles, the idea must be expressed in Latin by a clause with **cum** (or some other conjunction) or the voice must be changed to the active.

372. VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel.

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia.

discordia, -ae, *f.* [**dis-, cord-** *of* **cor, cordis,** heart, + **ia**], discord, disagreement.

appāreō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus [**ad, pāreō**], be clear, appear.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**con, faciō**], finish.

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, dēfēnsus [**dē, fendō**], defend.

regredior, -dī, -gressus [**re, gradior**], return.

373. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Xerxēs Thermopylīs expūgnātīs, statim Athēnās iter dīrēxit. 2. In urbem nūllīs dēfendentibus ingressus est, et senibus quōs in arce invēnerat interfectīs urbem incendiō dēlēvit. 3. Discordiā apud ducēs classis ortā, Themistoclēs veritus est nē domōs suās discēderent.

4. Sed clausī in angustō marī Graecī domōs regredī nōn potuērunt. 5. Cum dolus Themistoclis ad Graecōs dēlātus esset, omnibus appāruit sē prūdentiā ēius cōnservātōs esse. 6. Sī dolus ante proelium repertus esset, Themistoclēs prōditiōnis damnātus esset. 7. Xerxēs classe suā victā in Asiam redīre voluit. 8. Veritus est ne pōns quō regredī voluit in Asiam rescinderētur. 9. Hōc bellō cōnfectō Lacedaemoniī exīstimāvērunt sibi cum Athēniēnsibus certāmen fore. 10. Scīmus multōs scrīpsisse Themistoclem Xerxe rēgnante in Asiam trānsiisse.

II. 1. When Tarquin waged war with the Romans, his son commanded the horsemen (cavalry). 2. After his son was killed, Tarquin was put to flight. 3. Since the Romans fought with great courage, Tarquin was frightened. 4. Under the leadership of Porsenna great forces came against the Romans. 5. It is clear that in the reign of Tarquin many bad deeds were done. 6. Since Horatius defended the bridge, the enemy could not cross the Tiber. 7. After the capture of the city many inhabitants were cast into prison. 8. On hearing this talk, all wondered at the man's courage. 9. For although the citadel had been betrayed, he said he would defend the city. 10. Since the general had returned to camp, the soldiers also wished to follow him.

374.   READING LESSON.

THE BEGINNING OF INTERNAL TROUBLES.

Ita rēgibus expulsīs (*expelled*) Rōmānī cum fīnitimīs suīs quī Tarquiniōs in rēgnum repōnere (*restore*) volēbant bella gessērunt. Hostēs, ut (*as*) dīximus, superāvērunt, neque rēgēs in potestātem restituere coāctī sunt. Sed tum nova

perīcula in rē pūblicā orta sunt; cīvēs enim' externīs (*external*) hostibus superātīs inter sē contendērunt. Multī erant Rōmānī quī propter longa bella pauperēs (*poor*) factī erant, nōnnūllī etiam quibus numquam fuerant agrī et pecūnia. Hī novōs agrōs quī bellō captī erant sibi darī volēbant; dīvitēs (*the rich*) autem et prīncipēs reī pūblicae veritī nē potestātem suam āmitterent (*lose*) sī inter pauperēs agrī dīviderentur, sibi eōs vīndicābant (*claimed*) et pauperēs opprimēbant (*oppressed*). Unde māgna discordia orta est.

———•o°o•°o•———

CHAPTER LXIII.

Gerund and Gerundive.

375. Learn the gerund and gerundive of **amō, habeō, dūcō, audiō**, and **eō**.

Notice that the gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative and vocative cases, and that the gerundive is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The gerund is a *verbal noun,* the gerundive a *verbal adjective.*

376. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

GEN. **Mīlitēs pūgnandī fīnem fēcērunt,** *the soldiers made an end of fighting.*

DAT. **Dux nātus est pūgnandō,** *the leader was born for fighting.*

Acc. **Nostrī ad pūgnandum convēnērunt,** *our men assembled for fighting (to fight).*

Abl. **Mīlitēs pūgnandō fortēs fīunt,** *soldiers are made brave by fighting.*

Notice that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *-ing.* The accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions. Instead of the nominative and accusative (without a preposition) of the gerund, the infinitive is used; as, **habēre nōn est servāre,** *having is not keeping;* **dīcit habēre nōn esse servāre,** *he says having is not keeping.*

377.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Gen.	**Potestās datur**	**urbem capiendī,** **urbis capiendae,**	*an opportunity of taking the city is offered.*
Dat.	**Diēs vē- nit**	**cōnsulēs creandō,** *(very rare),* **cōnsulibus creandīs,**	*the day has come for choosing consuls.*
Acc.	**Vēnērunt**	**ad urbem capiendum** *(rare),* **ad urbem capiendam,**	*they came to take (for taking) the city.*
Abl.	**Loquimur**	**dē oppidum conden- dō** *(rare),* **dē oppidō condendō,**	*we are talking about founding a town.*

Notice that in the above sentences the gerund takes an object like the finite verb. The gerund itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

378. RULE. — *The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.*

Notice that the *gerundive* agrees with its noun like any other adjective. The noun itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

It is only when the gerund would take an object in the accusative that the gerundive can be used instead. The two constructions are both admissible in the genitive; in the other cases, the gerundive is usual.

379. RULE. — *Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.*

380. VOCABULARY.

concordia, -ae, *f.* [con-, cord- of cor, cordis, heart, +ia], harmony.

Miltiadēs, -is, *m.*, Miltiades.

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, plebeians, common people.

Parus, -ī, *f.*, Paros.

dēbilis, -is, weak.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accuse.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con, iūrō], conspire; coniūrātī, *as noun*, conspirators.

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, pūgnō], attack.

381. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cum multī ē ducibus regredī et suās domōs dēfendere vellent, omnēs ad pūgnandum dolō Themistoclis coāctī sunt. 2. Miltiadēs dux creātus est ad bellum gerendum contrā īnsulās quae Persās iūverant. 3. Cum Parum expūgnāre nōn posset, prōditiōnis accūsātus est. 4. Eō tempore dēbilis erat vulneribus quae in oppūgnandō oppidō accēperat. 5. Damnātus in carcerem coniectus est et ibi mortuus est. 6. Paucīs relictīs ad arcem dēfendendam, dux ad fīnīs hostium iter dīrēxit. 7. Ad rēs cōnficiendās duōs mēnsēs satis fore magistrātūs exīstimāvērunt. 8. Discordiā ortā urbis relinquendae causā

plēbs convēnerat.   9. Coniūrātī manum cōnsulum inter-
ficiendōrum causā[1] parāvērunt.   10. Nisi concordia inter
patrēs et plēbem restituātur, dēbilis cīvitās fīat.
11. Lēgibus pārēre necēsse est in līberā cīvitāte.
12. Nōbīs appāret rēs saepe augērī nārrandō.

II. 1. The general talked much about waging war.
2. When the day came for choosing the consuls, the com-
mon people assembled in the forum.   3. (It) was immedi-
ately reported to the army that consuls had been chosen.
4. We have heard your talk to find out what you have in
mind.   5. The captives (when) set free returned to Asia
for (the purpose of) establishing a new state.   6. But
when the state was established, discord immediately arose.
7. The leaders of the common people talked among them-
selves about leaving the city.   8. If you should say
anything about making peace, you would lose the friend-
ship of the consul.   9. Although they had no hope of
taking the town, they attacked the gates bravely.   10. At
night they went away for the sake[1] of seeking sleep.

382.   READING LESSON.

MENENIUS AGRIPPA.

Inter patrēs (*senators*) et plēbem discordia orta est, quod
plēbs tribūtum (*taxes*) et mīlitiam (*military service*) ferre
nōlēbat.   Itaque in montem quī Mōns Sacer appellābātur
plēbs sēcēssit (*withdrew*).   Menēnius Agrippa cum ad
montem missus esset ut concordiam restitueret nihil aliud
apud plēbem quam hōc nārrāvīsse dīcitur : " Ōlim humānī
(*human*) artūs (*limbs*) cum ventrem (*stomach*) ōtiōsum

---

[1] For the sake of.   Abl. of cause.   Thus used, **causā** stands after
the genitive which limits it.

A ROMAN IN TIME OF PEACE.
(The Emperor Tiberius.)

(*idle*) vidērent, cōnsilium cēpērunt ut eum pūnīrent, et coniūrāvērunt (*conspired*) inter sē nē manūs ad ōs (*mouth*) cibum ferrent neque ōs acciperet datum neque dentēs (*teeth*) cōnficerent. Quō factō artūs ipsī, cum ventrem pūnīre vellent, aegrī et dēbilēs factī sunt, tōtumque corpus ad extrēmum (*extreme*) tābem (*decay*) vēnit. Inde appāruit ventrem quoque corporī ūtilem esse, eumque acceptōs cibōs concoquere (*digest*) et per omnēs corporis partēs dīgerere (*distribute*); itaque cum eō in grātiam rediērunt. Sīc (*thus*) senātus et populus quasi (*as if*) ūnum corpus discordiā pereunt, concordiā valent." Hāc fābulā nārrātā Menēnius plēbī persuāsit ut in urbem regrederētur.

———◦◦✕●✕◦◦———

CHAPTER LXIV.

Supine.

Expressions of Purpose.

383. Learn the supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

384.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Vēnērunt aquam petītum, *they came to seek water.*
Missus est rem renūntiātum, *he was sent to report the matter.*

385. RULE. — *The supine in -um (accusative supine) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

NOTE. — The most frequent use of the supine -*um* is with the verb **eō**, especially with the impersonal infinitive passive; as **amātum īrī**. This is the simplest way of forming the future infinitive passive. (For a more usual way of expressing the idea of the future infinitive passive, see the following chapter.)

386. Other ways of expressing purpose have already been given. *They came to seek water* may be expressed as follows : —

Vēnērunt ut aquam peterent (*ut* and the subjunctive, **265**).
Vēnērunt quī aquam peterent (relative and the subjunctive, **265**).
Vēnērunt ad aquam petendam (gerundive with *ad*, **376**).
Vēnērunt aquam petītum (accusative supine as above).

Instead of the gerundive with *ad* the gerund may be used, but only when the verb is intransitive; as, **vēnērunt ad mihi respondendum,** *they came to reply to me.*

387. Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund or gerundive in the genitive followed by **causā** (or **grātiā**), *for the sake of:* —

> **Vēnērunt aquam petendī causā (grātiā).**
> **Vēnērunt aquae petendae causā (grātiā).**

Causā and **grātiā** are the ablatives of **causa**, *cause*, and **grātia**, *favor, influence.* They are used with the genitive, somewhat as prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative, but when so used they are *always placed after the genitive.*

388. The future participle is also occasionally used to express purpose; as, **vēnērunt aquam petītūrī,** *they came about to seek water*, i.e. *they came to seek water.*

What are eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin?

389.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.
> **Facile est factū,** *it is easy to do.*
> **Difficile est dictū,** *it is hard to tell.*

390. RULE. — *The supine in -ū (ablative supine) is used with adjectives (and a few other words) to limit their meaning.*

391. VOCABULARY.

ars, artis, *f.*, art.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (Marcus Tullius).

quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor, *a Roman official.*

Rhodus, -ī, *f.*, Rhodes.

studium, -ī, *n.* [stud-, *of* studeo + ium], study, desire, zeal.

concēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssūrus [con, cēdō], depart, go.

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [in, dūcō], lead in *or* into, induce.

subvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -sus [sub, vertō], subvert, overthrow.

392. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cicerō ā patre Rōmam missus est ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs adesset. 2. Tum etiam tam clārus factus est ut nōn paucī eum vīsum et audītum ad scholās venīrent. 3. Tōtō animō studiō dīcendī sē dedit et quendam accusātum tantā prūdentiā dēfendit ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nūllus eum superāret. 4. Athēnās studiōrum sequendōrum causā petit. 5. Unde Rhodum sē contulit ubi celeberrimum magistrum habuit. 6. Rōmam regressus quaestor Siciliam habuit quam māgnā prūdentiā gēssisse [1] appāret. 7. Deinde cōnsul factus est eō tempore cum nōnnūllī nōbilēs studiō potiendī imperī inductī coniūrāvērunt ut rem pūblicam subverterent. 8. Captī ā cōnsule coniūrātī poenam dedērunt et ad breve tempus concordia restitūta est. 9. Posteā timōre inimīcōrum inductus in Graeciam habitātum concēssit. 10. Difficile est intellēctū eum tam dēbilem auctōritāte paucīs annīs factum esse.

II. 1. The common people came together from all parts of the city to attack the citadel. 2. They said they had come not to make peace, but to fight 3. When the

---

[1] Carried on, *i.e.* managed.

war was finished, Miltiades was accused of treason.
4. He went to the king of the Persians to ask assistance.
5. Miltiades was said to have tried to overthrow the state
and become king.   6. When his plan was reported to the
magistrates he departed from the city.   7. If this is the
best (thing) to do, let us do (it).   8. It is not easy to tell
why they came to ask (for) money.   9. If we should not
give them money, they would say we did not love our
friends.   10. Cicero showed more zeal in•speaking than
in acting.

393.   READING LESSON.

THE CAPTURE OF ROME BY THE GAULS.

Annō urbis conditae trecentēsimō sexāgēsimō quārtō
Rōmānīs ad Alliam flūmen victīs urbs Rōma ā Gallīs
capta est. Iuvenēs quī in urbe erant in arcem cōnscen-
dērunt (*went up*) ut vītās suās et deōrum templa (*temples*)
dēfenderent; senēs autem domōs ingressī adventum
Gallōrum exspectābant.   Illī eōrum quī cōnsulēs et ma-
gistrātūs fuerant, honōrum (*offices*, gen. pl.) īnsīgnibus
(*badges*) ōrnātī (*adorned*) in vestibulīs (*vestibules*) domō-
rum sedēbant (*sat*), ut cum hōstēs vēnissent in suā dīgni-
tāte (*dignity*) morerentur.   Gallī in domōs ingressī virōs
vident ōrnātū (*raiment*) et vultūs māiestāte (*majesty*) deīs
simillimōs.   Tandem ūnus ex hīs senibus Gallī cūiusdam
caput, quod barbam (*beard*) suam permulcēbat (*stroked*),
scipiōne (*staff*, abl.) eburneō (*ivory*) percussit (*struck*).
Īrātus (*angry*) Gallus eum occīdit.   Deinde cēterī senēs
necātī sunt.   Arx autem deōrum auxiliō servāta est.
Paulō post Gallīs māgnō proeliō victīs urbs lībertātem
et potestātem suam recuperāvit (*recovered*).

CHAPTER LXV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

Dative of Agent.

394. Examine the following:—

PRES.	**Amātūrus sum,** *I am about to love* (or, *I am going to love*).
IMPERF.	**Amātūrus eram,** *I was about to love.*
FUT.	**Amātūrus erō,** *I shall be about to love.*
PERF.	**Amātūrus fuī,** *I have been (was) about to love.*
PLUPERF.	**Amātūrus fueram,** *I had been about to love.*
FUT. PERF.	**Amātūrus fuerō,** *I shall have been about to love.*

The future active participle is combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of **sum.** The combination is called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation.* The tenses are called *present, imperfect,* etc., according to the tense of **sum** employed.

The future active participle of any verb, with the present indicative of **sum,** has substantially the same meaning as the future active indicative. The two expressions, **amābō** and **amātūrus sum,** are very nearly equivalent. But for the other forms given above, there are no simple equivalents.

395.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Nōn dubitō quīn amātūrus sit, *I do not doubt that he will (is about to) love.*

Interrogāvī quid factūrus esset, *I asked what he was going to do.*

Notice that the First Periphrastic Conjugation supplies a future tense for the subjunctive mood.

The regular future active infinitive (as **amātūrus esse**) is evidently a part of the First Periphrastic Conjugation, being formed of the future active participle and the infinitive of **sum**.

The future passive infinitive is also frequently formed with the aid of **sum**. For this purpose, the future infinitive of **sum** is used; but the form employed is almost invariably **fore**, not **futūrum esse**. When thus used **fore** is followed by ut and the subjunctive; as, —

Dīcō fore ut amētur, *I say that he will be loved (that it will be or will come to pass that he is loved).*

Putābam fore ut liber scrīberētur, *I thought that the book would be written (that it would be or would come to pass that the book was written).*

The future infinitive passive in Indirect Discourse is usually formed in this way.

396.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRES.   **Amandus sum,** *I am to be loved, I ought to (must) be loved, it is necessary that I be loved.*

IMPERF.   **Amandus eram,** *I was to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

FUT.   **Amandus erō,** *I ought (hereafter) to be loved, it will be necessary that I be loved.*

PERF.   **Amandus fuī,** *I have been (was) to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

The other moods (except the imperative) and tenses of **sum** are also used in combination with the gerundive, forming the *Second Periphrastic Conjugation.*

Observe that the Second Periphrastic Conjugation is *passive* and involves the idea of *necessity* or *obligation.*

397.   ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Hōc mihi faciendum est, *this must be done by me,* or *I must do this.*

Intellēxit pontem sibi faciendum esse, *he understood that a bridge must be built by him,* or *that he must build a bridge.*

Observe that the person by whom the action is to be performed is put in the dative. This is called the *dative of agent.*

398. RULE. — *With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.*

399.   VOCABULARY.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.,* Catiline (the leader of the conspirators).

exsilium, -ī, *n.,* exile.

ingenium, -ī, *n.,* nature, ability.

comprehendō, -ere, -dī, comprehēnsus [con, prehendō], seize, arrest.

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [con, premō], check, crush.

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [in, iaciō], throw upon, suggest.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -statūrus [prae, stō], stand before, excel.

400.   EXERCISES.

I. 1. In pūniendīs coniūrātīs, Cicerō summā virtūte āc fortitūdine ūsus est. 2. Dīxit cōnsilium patriae servandae iniectum esse sibi ā deīs cum Catilīna coniūrāsset contrā eam. 3. " Neque potuī " dīxit, " meō ingeniō intellegere quid esset optimum factū." 4. Cōnsul interrogāvit num Catilīna in exsilium itūrus esset. 5. Sī incolumis concēdere vīs, statim hōc tibi faciendum est. 6. Multa Cicerōnī agenda erant ut comprimeret eōs quī rem pūblicam subvertere cupīvērunt. 7. Coniūrātī erant

comprehendendī, accūsandī[1] apud senātōrēs, epistulae eōrum ad senātum dēferendae. 8. Omnia quae facienda fuērunt facta sunt.   9. Artī dīcendī summō studiō sē dare illīs necēsse est quī in eā praestāre volunt. 10. Multī Rōmānī in Graeciam magistrōs Graecōs audītum[2] ībant.

II. 1. Harmony must be restored in the state by wise words. 2. Induced by the wise talk of the ambassador, the common people decided to return to the city. 3. Cicero (though) weak in body was strong in ability. 4. I do not know why the common people were about to attack the citadel.   5. You must not go out, for your father ordered you to remain at home.   6. Let us ask the citizens why they are about to accuse Miltiades. 7. The conspirators must be crushed, that the state may be saved.   8. We do not doubt that we must go away. 9. The consul said that the conspirators would be punished.   10. In carrying on the state (*i.e.* the government), it is often hard to understand what is the best (thing) to do.

401.   READING LESSON.

REGULUS.

Mārcus Atīlius Rēgulus Carthāginiēnsēs (*Carthaginians*) multīs proeliīs superāverat eōsque pācem petere coēgerat. Quam cum ille nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus dare nōllet, Carthāginiēnsēs Xanthippō (*Xanthippus*) Lacedaemoniō duce acceptō bellum redintegrāvērunt

---

[1] Brought to trial.
[2] To hear, *i.e.* enjoy the instruction of.

(*renewed*).   Exercitū Rōmānō māximā clāde victō Rēgulus
ipse captus et in carcerem coniectus est.   Deinde Rōmam
dē permūtandīs (*to be exchanged*) captīvīs missus est, dātō
iūreiūrandō (*oath*), ut, sī nōn impetrāsset (*obtain what
was asked*), redīret ipse Carthāginem (*Carthage*).   Quī,
cum Rōmam vēnisset, inductus in senātum mandāta
(*the messages*) Carthāginiēnsium exposuit (*laid before it*) ;
et prīmum (*at first*) nē sententiam (*opinion*) dīceret recū-
sāvit (*refused*) ; iūssus tamen dīcere negāvit (*said not*)
esse ūtile captīvōs Carthāginiēnsibus reddī, illōs enim
iuvenēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē autem iam senem.   Cūius
cum valuisset auctōritās, captīvī retentī sunt.   Rēgulus
deinde, cum retinērētur ab amīcīs, tamen Carthāginem
rediit.   Scīvit sē ad crūdēlissimōs (*very cruel*) hostēs
proficiscī ; sed iūsiūrandum sibī cōnservandum esse putā-
vit.   Reversum (*having returned*) Carthāginiēnsēs omnī
cruciātū '*torture*) necāvērunt.
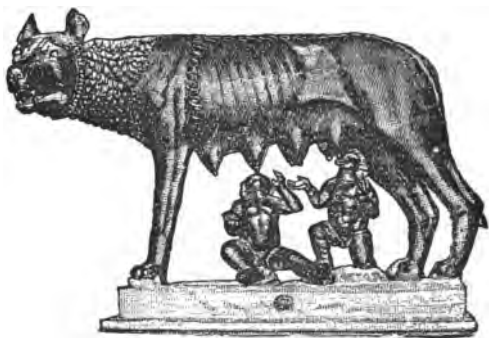
ROMULUS AND REMUS.

READING LESSONS.

402. *The Woman and her Maids.*

Mulier pauperrima ancillās suās ex somnō ad opus excitābat, cum gallus cantāverat. At ancillae māgnō labōre dēfessae gallum necāvērunt. Sed paucīs diēbus optābant, ut gallus vīvus esset; nam mulier dē hōrā noctis incerta nunc ancillās saepe iam mediā nocte excitābat.

at, *conj.*, but.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sing, crow.

excitō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, awaken.

gallus, -ī, *m.*, a cock.

incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.

pauper, -eris, poor.

vīvus, -a, -um, living.

403. *The Farmer and his Sons.*

Agricola senex cum mortem appropinquantem sentīret, fīliōs convocāvit, quī saepe discordēs erant. Fascem virgārum iīs trādidit et imperāvit, ut frangerent. Quod cum frātrēs frustrā studērent facere, pater fascem solvit et virgās fīliīs distribuit, ut eās frangerent. Quod cum nūllō labōre perfēcissent, didicērunt, quam firma rēs esset concordia, quam perniciōsa discordia.

199

disc**ō**, -ere, didicī, learn.

discors, -dis, quarrelsome, discordant. [dis, cord-, of cor, cordis, *heart*.]

distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, divide, distribute. [dis, tribuō.]

fascis, -is, *m.*, bundle, faggot.

firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, command, order.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish. [per, faciō.]

quam, *adv.*, how.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loosen, undo.

virga, -ae, *f.*, twig.

404. *A Retort.*

Vēnit ōlim quīdam ad Aristippum philosophum eīque dīxit: "Vīsne fīlium meum artēs· tuās docēre[1]?" Respondit Aristippus: "Hōc equidem faciam acceptīs ductus talentīs." Pater autem prētiō territus, dīxit: "At servum minōris[2] emere possum." Contrā[3] Aristippus, "Fac[4] hōc: ita duōs servōs habēbis."

Aristippus, -ī, *m.*, Aristippus.

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus, buy.

equidem, *adv.*, certainly.

philosophus, -ī, *m.*, philosopher.

prētium, -ī, *n.*, price.

talentum, -ī, *n.*, talent, about $1,080.

[1] Doceō takes two accusatives. [2] *For less*, genitive denoting an indefinite price. [3] In reply. [4] Imperative of faciō.

405. *The Faithful Dog.*

Rēx Pyrrhus in viā canem vīdit, quī apud corpus hominis necātī sedēbat. "Hīc canis," inquit ūnus ex comitibus rēgis, "iam trēs diēs hōc locō sedet, nūllum cibum capiēns." Tum iussū rēgis corpus sepultum est. Post paucōs diēs lustrātiō mīlitum ā rēge habita est. Canis ille apud rēgem sedēbat. In exercitū autem erant iī hominēs, quī dominum illīus canis necāverant. Canis, cum eōs

vīdisset, statim eōs allātrāvit. Ita canis eōs indicāvit, quī dominum necāverant. Tum rēx eōs interrogāvit, num illum hominem interfēcissent. Cum hōc facinus cōnfessī essent, iussū rēgis interfectī sunt. Canem autem, quī dominō tam fidēlis fuerat, rēx semper sēcum habēbat.

allātrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bark at.

cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus, confess.

fidēlis, -e, faithful.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, show.

inquit, says.

iussū, by order.

lustrātiō, -ōnis, review.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit.

sepellō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), sepultus, bury.

406. *The Lion, the Ass, and the Fox.*

Vulpēs et asinus et leō in vēnandō societātem inter sē fēcerant. Cum multās bestiās interfēcissent, leō asinō imperāvit, ut praedam dīvideret. Is omnibus aequālēs partēs tribuit. Leō, cum id vīdisset, eum lacerāvit. Deinde vulpī imperat, ut praedam dīvidat et novās partēs faciat. Callida autem vulpēs leōnī māiōrem partem tribuit et sibi ipsa minōrem capit. Cum id fēcisset, leō rīsit et vulpem interrogāvit: "Unde hōc didicistī?" Vulpēs respondit: "Fortūnā asinī prūdentior facta sum." Quid haec fābula docet? Ex calamitāte aliōrum discimus, quid nōbīs ūtile sit.

aequālis, -e, equal.

callidus, -a, -um, cunning.

discō, -ere, -didicī, —, learn.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, order.

lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tear.

societās, -ātis, *f.*, alliance. [socio-, tās.]

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, assign.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus, hunt.

vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox.

407. *The Lion's Share.*

Cum leō vēnātum īret, sociī ēius erant canis et lupus. Leō cum partēs praedae aequālēs factae essent, ita locūtus

est: "Prīmam partem capiō, quia rēx vester sum; secundam, quia fortis sum mihi dabitis; tertiam quī[1] tetigerit[2] mē inimīcum sibi habēbit." Ita leō tōtam praedam sōlus abstulit.   Haec fābula docet, quam[3] perīculōsum sit societātēs cum potentiōribus inīre.

aequālis, -e, equal.
auferō,-ferre, abstulī, ablātus, take away. [ab, ferō.]
ineō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, enter into. [in, eō.]

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous. [perīculo-, ōsus.]
quia, conj., because.
societās, -ātis, f., alliance. [socio-, tās.]
vēnor, -āre, vēnātus, hunt.

[1] Whoever.   [2] fut. perf. See 341, note.   [3] How.

408.   The Horse and the Ass.

Asinus onustus sarcinīs equum rogāvit, ut partem oneris suī portāret.   Sed equus superbus omnēs precēs repudiāvit. Paulō post igitur asinus labōre dēfessus mediā in viā mortuus est.   Tum dominus omnibus sarcinīs et īnsuper pelle asinī equum onerāvit.   Sērō equus superbiam suam improbāvit et vituperāvit.

igitur, adv., therefore.
improbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, censure.
īnsuper, adv., moreover.
onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, load. [cf. onus.]
pellis, -is, f., skin.

prex, precis, f., prayer.
sarcina, -ae, f., pack.
sērō, adv., late, too late.
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, refuse, reject.
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask.
vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blame.

409.   The Ass and the Wolf.

Ad asinum gravī morbō aegrum sociī vēnērunt, ut quid ageret[1] vidērent.   Inter aliōs lupus quoque vēnit.   Quī[2]

cum corpus ēius tangeret, et interrogāvisset, quae corporis partēs māximē dolērent, asinus respondit: "Eae partēs corporis māximē dolent, quās tū tangis."

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, morbus, -ī, *m.*, disease.
  give pain.

410.   *Tantalus.*

Tantalus tam cārus fuit omnibus deīs, ut ad epulās eōrum invītārētur et cōnsilia eōrum cōgnōsceret. Sed cum ea, quae apud deōs audīverat, hominibus prōderet, apud īnferōs mediā in aquā collocātus est. Hanc frustrā studēbat haurīre, nam semper fugiēbat. Etiam frūctūs, quī super caput suum pendēbant, frustrā studēbat carpere, nam rāmī arborum ventō mōtī semper fugiēbant.

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, pick.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, know.

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feasts.

fructus, -ūs, *m.*, fruit.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, drink.

īnferus, -a, -um, below; īnferī, the inhabitants of the lower world.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, hang.

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, bough.

411.   *An Honorable People.*

Themistoclēs ōlim pūgnā nāvālī victīs Persīs Athēnīs apud conciōnem dīxit: "Cōnsilium in animō habeō: hōc ūtile reī pūblicae erit, cēlārī tamen oportet. Ūnī ē prīmōribus¹ rem dīcere volō." Aristīdēs ad hōc mūnus dēlēctus est. Huīc dīxit Themistoclēs: "Lacedaemoniōrum classis in ancorīs² in portū est. Hanc clam incendere poterimus.

Ita illōrum potestās nāvālis dēlēbitur." Hīs audītīs Aristīdēs reversus apud conciōnem dīxit: "Themistoclis cōnsilium ūtile quidem, sed minimē honestum est." Itaque Athēniēnsēs nē audītum quidem cōnsilium sprēvērunt.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.
Aristīdēs, -is, *m.*, Aristides.
clam, *adv.*, secretly.
conciō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly.
honestus, -a, -um, honorable.
minimē, *adv.*, not at all.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty.
nīvālis, -e, naval.
nē . . . quidem, not even.

oportet, *imp. v.*, it is necessary, it ought.
prīmōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*, chief men.
pūgna, -ae, *f.*, battle.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed.
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, reject.
tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless.

¹ Instead of the part. gen., *ē* with abl. is used.   ² *At anchor.*

412.   *Respect to Age.*

Lȳsander Lacedaemonius hōc dīxisse dīcitur: "Lacedaemone optimē vīvere possunt senēs. Nusquam enim tantam habent auctōritātem." Athēnīs ōlim lūdīs īnstitūtīs quīdam in theātrum senex vēnit, neque eī locus datus est ā suīs cīvibus; tum ad lēgātōs Lacedaemoniōs accēssit; hī autem omnēs cōnsurrēxēre et senī locum dedērunt. Hōc factum probantibus Athēniēnsibus, ūnus ē lēgātīs dīxit, "Athēniēnsēs sciunt quidem rēcta facere, sed facere nōlunt."

Lȳsander, -drī, *m.*, Lysander.
nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.
īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, arrange. [in, statuō.]
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theatre.
accēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus, approach. [ad, cēdō.]
cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -sur-

rēctūrus, rise up together. [con, sub, regō.]
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed.
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approve.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed.
rēctus, -a, -um, right.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctūrus, live.

413.   *The Trojan War.*

1. Paris, Priamī fīlius, cuī Venus pulcherrimam fēminam
pollicita erat, Helenam, uxōrem Menelāī, rēgis Lacedae-
moniōrum, rapuit et sēcum Trōiam dūxit.   Menelāus cum
repperisset, ā quō uxor rapta esset, Graeciae rēgēs ōrāvit,
ut sibi auxiliārentur iniūriamque ulcīscerentur.   Omnēs
auxilium pollicitī sunt et Aulidem convēnērunt.   Aga-
memnonī, Menelāī frātrī, imperium trādidērunt.   Praeter
eum clārissimī fuērunt Nestor, quī omnēs sapientiā supe-
rābat, Ulixēs, vir omnium prūdentissimus, Achillēs, Pēleī
et Thetidis fīlius, Āiāx, Diomēdēs.   Sed Graecī cum ad
nāvigandum parātī essent, ā Diānā retentī sunt, quae
Agamemnonī īrāscēbātur, quod in vēnandō cervam deae
sacram interfēcerat.   Ut ēius īra placārētur, Calchās vātēs
Agamemnonī persuāsit, ut fīliam Īphigenīam immolāret.
Cum hōc facere parāret, Diāna cervam prō eā supposuit
eamque in terram Tauricam abdūxit, ut ibi sacerdōs templī
esset.

2. Cum Trōiānī urbem mūrīs firmīs turribusque altīs
mūnītam animō fortī dēfenderent, Graecī in lītore castra
fēcērunt.   Decimō annō bellī Agamemnōn Chryseidem,
fīliam sacerdōtis Apollinis, cēpit.   Cum eam ā patre
rogātus nōn redderet, is deum ōrāvit, ut Graecōs pūnīret.
Novem diēs Apollō eīs perniciem parāvit multōsque sagit-
tīs interfēcit.   Decimō diē vātēs interrogātus, quārē deus
īrāscerētur, respondit: "Īra deī plācābitur, sī Agamemnōn
fīliam patrī remīserit."   Agamemnōn ab Achille vituperātus
eam quidem reddidit, sed Brīseidem, quam ille rapuerat, eī
abdūxit.   Achillēs pūgnā abstinuit, ut iniūriam acceptam
ulcīscerētur.   Trōiānī cum hōc audīvissent, Graecōs aggressī
multōs eōrum interfēcērunt; nisi ab Āiāce impedītī essent,

nāvēs eōrum incendissent. In tantō perīculō Graecī lēgātōs ad Achillem mīsērunt rogātum, ut Agamemnonī īgnōsceret pūgnaeque interesset. Sed is precibus eōrum nōn mōtus est.

3. Patroclus cum vidēret, quantōpere Graecī ā Trōiānīs urgerentur, Achillem rogāvit, ut sibi arma trāderet. Eīs ōrnātus cum Trōiānīs pūgnāvit multōsque eōrum, quī adspectū armōrum territī fūgērunt, necāvit, sed ipse ab Hectore, virō omnium Trōiānōrum fortissimō, interfectus est. Achillēs cum eī mors amīcī nūntiāta esset, flēvit eamque ulciscī cōnstituit. Thetis fīlium cōnsōlāta Vulcānum ōrāvit, ut eī arma nova faceret. Achillēs armīs prae-clārissimīs ōrnātus cum Trōiānīs pūgnāvit et Hectorem fugientem persecūtus interfēcit. Corpus Patroclī cum duodecim iuvenibus Trōiānīs quōs Achillēs cēperat et necāverat, cremātum est. Priamus ā Mercuriō, nūntiō deōrum, ductus noctū in tentōrium Achillis vēnit eumque cum multīs lacrimīs ōrāvit, ut deōs verēns patris miserērētur corpusque fīlī cārissimī sibi redderet. Decimō diē, post-quam Priamus Trōiam reverterat, Hector ā Trōiānīs cre-mātus est.

4. Post breve tempus Achillēs ā Paride, cuī Apollō aderat, sagittā vulnerātus et necātus est. Graecī cum post mortem ēius in patriam revertī cuperent, ab Ulixe retentī sunt, quī eīs persuāsit, ut equum līgneum facerent. Cōnsilium ēius ab omnibus probātum est. In equī ventrem fortissimī prīncipum Graecōrum sē abdidērunt, in quibus erant Ulixēs, Menelāus, Neoptolemus, Achillis fīlius. Cē-terī Graecī nāvēs cōnscendērunt. Trōiānī equum admīrātī, cum dolum nōn timērent, in urbem trāxērunt. Noctū eī, quī in ventre equī erant, armātī ex eō ēgressī sunt, dormi-entēs cūstōdēs portārum interfēcērunt sociōsque sīgnō revocāvērunt. Omnēs ferē Trōiānī necātī sunt. Urbs

ipsa incendiō dēlēta est. Tum Graecī, quī ingentem praedam cēpērunt, nāvēs cōnscendērunt et in patriam revertērunt. Ita bellum Trōiānum annō ante Christum nātum mīllēsimō centēsimō octogēsimō quartō fīnītum est.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hide. [**ab, dō.**]

abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, keep away. [**abs, teneō.**]

adspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.

aggredior, -ī, -gressus, attack. [**ad, gradior.**]

Āiāx, -ācis, *m.*, Ajax.

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo.

Aulis, -idis, *f.*, Aulis.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, help.

Brīsēis, -idis, *f.*, Briseis.

Calchās, -ntis, *m.*, Calchas.

cerva, -ae, *f.*, a hind.

Christus, -ī, *m.*, Christ.

Chrȳsēis, -idis, *f.*, Chryseis.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, embark on.

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, console.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn.

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana.

Diomēdēs, -is, *m.*, Diomedes.

dormiō, -ire, -īvī (-iī), -ītūrus, sleep.

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, go out. [**ē, gradior.**]

ferē, *adv.*, almost.

fīniō, -ire, -īvī, -itus, finish.

fīrmus, -a, -um, strong.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, bewail.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sacrifice.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, be present at. [**inter, sum.**]

Īphigenīa, -ae, *f.*, Iphigenia.

ira, -ae, *f.*, anger.

īrāscor, -ī, īrātus, be angry.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

ligneus, -a, -um, of wood, wooden.

Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, Mercury.

mīllēsimus, -a, -um, one thousandth.

misereor, -ērī, -itus, take pity on.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sail.

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

Neoptolemus, -ī, *m.*, Neoptolemus.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, equip.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, entreat.

Patroclus, -ī, *m.*, Patroclus.

Pēleus, -eī, *m.*, Peleus.

persequor, -ī, -secūtus, follow, pursue. [**per, sequor.**]

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, appease.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, promise.

praeclārus, -a, -um, very famous. [**prae, clārus.**]

Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam.

prō, *prep.*, in return for.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approve.

pūgna, -ae, *f.*, battle.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, carry off.

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send back. [re, mittō.]

revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, return. [re, vertō.]

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call back. [re, vocō.]

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask.

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* and *f.*, priest, priestess. [cf. sacer.]

suppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, substitute. [sub, pōnō.]

Tauricus, -a, -um, Taurian.

tentōrium, -ī, *n.*, tent.

Thetis, -idis, *f.*, Thetis.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, drag.

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, avenge.

urgeō, -ēre, ursī, press hard.

vātēs, -is, *m.* and *f.*, soothsayer, seer.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus, hunt.

venter, ventris, *m.*, belly.

Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, find fault with, chide.

Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan.

414.   *Ulysses and Polyphemus.*

1. Ulixēs cum in patriam proficīscerētur, ad terram Cyclōpum vēnit, quī neque oppida neque domōs habēbant, sed in spēluncīs habitābant. Ferī erant et ingentēs, ferōcissimus vērō omnium erat Polyphēmus, Neptūnī fīlius, quī ūnum oculum mediā in fronte habēbat. Aberat Polyphēmus eō tempore, quō Ulixēs cum duodecim fortissimīs comitibus spēluncam ēius ingressus est; mīrābantur igitur māgnam cōpiam lactis et cāseī, quam ibi reperiēbant, et comitēs suasērunt, ut cāseōs nōnnullōs caperent et terram statim relinquerent, quod Cyclōpēs timēbant. At Ulixēs eīs nōn assēnsus est, sed adventum Polyphēmī exspectāre cōnstituit, ut mōre hospitum dōna ab eō postulāret.

2. Tandem Polyphēmus ovēs suās in spēluncam dūxit et portam saxō ingentī clausit. Tum cum Graecōs vīdisset, vultū ferōcī interrogāvit, quī essent et quid in suā spēluncā peterent. Ulixēs respondit: "Graecī sumus; cum Trōiānīs

decem annōs bellum gessimus, decimō annō urbem expūgnā-
vimus et dēlēvimus; nunc in patriam proficīscentēs ventīs
retinēmur et impedīmur. Cum igitur deī nōs ad terram
tuam dūxerint petimus ā tē, ut illōs, quī hospitēs miserōs
tuentur, vereāris et nōbīs eās rēs dēs quae nōbīs necēssāriae
sunt. Sī hōc fēceris, grātī tibi erimus; sī nōn fēceris,
Iūpiter tē pūniet." Cum Ulixēs haec locūtus esset, ille
rīdēns: "Nihil," inquit, "vōbīs deī prōderunt, quōrum
poenās nōn timeō." Tum duōs comitēs Ulixis interfēcit
et dēvorāvit; nocte vērō mediās inter ovēs suās dormīvit.

3. Ulixēs per tōtam noctem cōgitābat, quōmodō
Cyclōpem pūnīret et sociōs suōs servāret. Postrīdiē igitur
cum ille iterum duōs Graecōs dēvorāvisset ovēsque ex
spēluncā dūxisset, cōnsilium prūdentissimum, quod invē-
nerat, cum sociīs commūnicāvit et clāvam acuit, quam ille in
vēnāndō portābat. Vesperī Polyphēmus gregem suum
redūxit eademque fēcit, quae prīmō diē fēcerat. Ulixēs
vērō eum hortātus est, ut vīnum gustāret, quod sēcum por-
tāverat. Hōc vīnō dēlectātus Cyclōps Ulixī dōnum prōmī-
sit et interrogāvit, quō nōmine vocārētur. Cuī hīc re-
spondit: "Mihi est nōmen Nēmō." Tum ille rīdēns:
"Nēminem," inquit, "ultimum interficiam; hōc accipiet
praemium." Cum statim somnō opprimerētur, Ulixēs clāvā
illā, quam parāverat, auxiliō amīcōrum eum occaecāvit.
Dolōre victus ille māgnā vōce clāmat, aliōs Cyclōpēs vocat;
adsunt, interrogant, audiunt ex spēluncā haec verba:
"Nēmō mihi īnsidiātur, Nēmō mē necat!" Tum illum
vituperant statimque flentem et clāmantem relinquunt.

4. Māne timēns, nē Graecī ūnā cum ovibus spēluncam
relinquerent, Polyphēmus mediā in portā sedēns gregem
ēmīsit. Sed Ulixēs māgnā prūdentiā ternōs arietēs virgīs
ita colligāvit, ut is, quī medius erat, virum ad corpus suum

alligātum portāret; ipse vērō arietem māximum ēlēgit, sub quō sē occultāvit. Hīc ariēs cum ultimus portae appropinquāret, Cyclōps ita locūtus est: "Cūr tū hodiē ultimus omnium spēluncam relinquis? Dolōre mihi vidēris, quod improbus ille Nēmō dominum tuum oculō prīvāvit. Tū sī ā deīs vōcem accēpissēs, mihi dīcerēs, ubi illum invenīrem. Statim et eum et comitēs ēius interficerem."

5. Graecī cum ita ex spēluncā effūgissent, ad nāvem suam īre contendērunt multāsque ovēs sēcum dūxērunt. Ulixēs vērō māgnā vōce, ut Cyclōps audīret, clāmāvit: "Polyphēme, ut sciās, quis tē oculō prīvāverit, sī hominēs tē interrogābunt: Ulixēs tē occaecāvit. Deī quōrum lēgēs contempsistī et laesistī, tē pūnīvērunt. Haec cum audīvisset Polyphēmus, Neptūnum, patrem suum, dominum maris, ōrāvit, ut fīlium ulciscerētur et illum īrā māgnā persequerētur. Multās igitur calamitātēs in marī Ulixēs passus est et tandem decimō annō, omnibus comitibus prīvātus, in patriam vēnit.

---

acuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, sharpen.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind. [**ad, ligō.**]

assentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, agree to. [**ad, sentiō.**]

at, *conj.*, but.

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry aloud.

clāva, -ae, *f.*, stake.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind together. [**con, ligō.**]

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, communicate, impart.

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptus, defy, despise. [**con, temnō.**]

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, eat up.

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, grieve.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītūrus, sleep.

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, escape. [**ex, fugiō.**]

ēlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, pick out. [**ē, legō.**]

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send out. [**ē, mittō.**]

ferus, -a, -um, savage.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, weep.

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, taste.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, urge.

igitur, *conj.*, therefore.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked. [in, probus.]

inquit, says, said.

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus, lie in wait for, plot against.

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger.

iterum, *adv.*, again.

Iūpiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter.

lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk.

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, offend.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning.

miror, -ārī, -ātus, wonder at.

necēssārius, -a, -um, necessary.

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, Neptune.

occaecō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blind. [ob, and the stem of caecus.]

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hide.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, overwhelm. [ob, premō.]

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, beg.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, the next day. [for posterō diē.]

persequor, -ī, -secūtus, follow up. [per, sequor.]

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deprive.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, promise. [prō, mittō.]

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back. [re, dūcō.]

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit.

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsūrus, urge, advise.

ternī, -ae, -a, three each, by threes.

tueor, -ērī, tuitus (or tūtus), protect.

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, avenge.

ūnā, *adv.*, together.

vēnor, -ārī, vēnātus, hunt.

vērō, *adv.*, but.

vesper, -eris, *m.*, evening; *locative*, vesperī, in the evening.

videor, -ērī, vīsus, seem.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.

virga, -ae, *f.*, twig.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, find fault with.

415. *Leonidas.*

1. Xerxēs cum ingentibus cōpiīs profectus est, ut Graecōs, ā quibus Dārēus victus erat, pūnīret. Cum Thermopylīs appropinquāret audīretque, quam parvō numerō hostium angustiae dēfenderentur, ad rēgem Lacedaemoniōrum, quī hīs cōpiīs praeerat, nūntiōs mīsit

pōstulātum, ut arma trāderent.   Sed ille respondit:
" Venī et cape."   Xerxēs cum quattuor diēs morātus esset
neque Graecī arma trādidissent, mīlitibus imperāvit, ut ea
caperent.   Sed repulsī sunt; etiam illī, quī immortālēs
vocābantur, fugātī sunt.   Et haec sex mīlia quadringentī
Graecī Xerxem in Graeciam invādere impedīvissent, nisi
ab Ephialtē, cuī rēx Persārum praemia māgna pollicitus
erat, prōditī essent.

2.   Rēx Lacedaemoniōrum, cuī erat nōmen Leōnidās,
cum hōc sēnsisset, cum suīs morī cōnstituit.   Praeter qua-
dringentōs Thēbānōs, quī invītī remānserant, et septingentōs
Thespiēnsēs, quōs ille frustrā movēre studuerat, ut in
patriam reverterentur, trecentī Lacedaemoniī fuērunt.
Leōnidās ipse impetum in Persās fēcit.   Graecī neque
vulnera neque mortem timentēs pūgnāvērunt omnēsque
interfectī sunt.   Haec clādēs clārior est quam multae
victōriae.   Memoria hōrum Lacedaemoniōrum immortālis
est neque unquam dēlēbitur.

angustiae, -ārum, _f. pl._, nar-
    row pass.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus,
    defend, guard. [dē, fendō.]
Ephialtēs, -ae (_abl._, -ē), _m._,
    Ephialtes.
immortālis, -e, immortal. [in,
    mort- (of mors), -ālis.]
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, order.
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, in-
    vade. [in, vādō.]
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.
moror, -ārī, morātus, delay.
pollīceor, -ērī, pollicitus, prom-
    ise.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hun-
    dred.
remaneō, -ere, -mānsī, -mān-
    sūrus, remain. [re, maneō.]
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus,
    drive back. [re, pellō.]
revertor, -ī, -versus, return.
    [re, vertor.]
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, per-
    ceive.
septingentī, -ae, -a, seven hun-
    dred.
Thēbānī, -ōrum, _m._, Thebans.
Thespiēnsēs, -ium, _m._, Thes-
    pians.
unquam, _adv._, ever.

416. *Pyrrhus.*

1. Rōmānī, postquam Samnītēs et omnēs ferē Ītaliae
gentēs superāvērunt, Tarentīnīs bellum indīxērunt, quod
lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent. Itaque Tarentīnī
Pyrrhum, rēgem Ēpīrī, rogāvērunt, ut sibi contrā Rōmānōs
auxiliō venīret. Pyrrhus, vir fortissimus et bellī peritis-
simus, māgnā laetitiā affectus est, quod ā Tarentīnīs ad id
bellum invītābātur. Quī cum māgnum exercitum parā-
visset, nāvibus in Ītaliam profectus est. Vīgintī ele-
phantōs sēcum dūxit: in elephantīs erant turrēs mīlitibus
implētae. Prīmum proelium factum est apud urbem Hēra-
clēam. Rōmānī, quamquam māximā fortitūdine pūgnā-
vērunt, tamen superātī sunt. Equī enim Rōmānōrum,
adspectū elephantōrum territī, tōtam aciem Rōmānōrum
perturbāvērunt. Quō factum est, ut Rōmānī, quī anteā
semper superiōrēs (victōrēs) fuerant, superārentur. Mīlle
quīngentī Rōmānī interfectī sunt, mīlle octingentōs Pyrrhus
cēpit. Rēx autem, quamquam victōriam ā Rōmānīs reportā-
verat, tamen fortitūdinem eōrum admīrātus (est et) pācem
cum eīs facere cupīvit.

2. Cineas, lēgātus Pyrrhī, cum Rōmam vēnisset, in
senātum ductus est. Lēgātus id fēcit, quod eī ā Pyrrhō
mandātum erat. Cum multī patrum condiciōnēs rēgis acci-
pere cuperent, ūnus ex eīs, quī erat caecus, surrēxit. "Ō
Rōmānī," inquit Appius Claudius, "usque ad hunc diem
doluī, quod caecus sum; hōc autem diē optō, ut nōn modō
caecus sed etiam surdus sim, nē ista improba cōnsilia audiam,
quae modō audīvī. Condiciōnēs rēgis accipere turpe est."
Cēterī patrēs, cum id audīvissent, voluntātī caecī illīus
senis obsecūtī (sunt et) condiciōnēs Pyrrhī repudiāvērunt.
Lēgātus, postquam ad rēgem revertit, omnia dīxit, quae

Rōmānī eī mandāverant. Tum ā rēge interrogātus, quālis esset senātus, lēgātus respondit: "Auctōritās et dīgnitās senātūs illīus Rōmānī tanta est, ut senātōrēs mihi nōn cīvēs, sed rēgēs esse videantur."

3. Post paucōs diēs lēgātī Rōmānōrum ad Pyrrhum vēnērunt, ut captīvōs commūtārent. In hīs lēgātīs erat Fābricius, vir māximā probitāte insīgnis. Hunc rēx māgnō dōnō sibi conciliāre studēbat, Fābricius autem id nōn accēpit. Posterō diē rēx cum Fābriciō colloquium habuit. Māximus elephantus aderat, ut eum terrēret. Tum Fābricius (dīxit): "Ō Pyrrhe, neque herī pecūnia tua mē ita dēlectāvit, ut eam cuperem, neque hodiē elephantus tuus mē terret." Pyrrhus, cum id audīvisset, cōnstantiam Fābricī admīrātus est. Īnsequentī annō Fābricius exercituī Rōmānōrum praeerat. Pyrrhus habēbat medicum, cuī in omnibus rēbus fidem habēbat; is autem rēgī nōn erat fidēlis. Nam ad Fābricium epistulam scrīpsit, in quā haec erant (scrīpta): "Sī māgnum mūnus mihi tribūtum erit, Pyrrhum, ācerrimum Rōmānōrum hostem, venēnō interficiam." Fābricius cūrāvit, ut rēx epistulam, quam ille scrīpserat, acciperet. Pyrrhus, cum hanc epistulam accēpisset, probitātem Fābricī admīrātus (est et) dīxit: "Ille est Fābricius, quī difficilius ab honestāte, quam sōl ā cursū āvertitur."

adspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.

afficiō,-ere,-fēcī,-fectus, affect. [ad, faciō.]

caecus, -a, -um, blind.

colloquium, -ī, *n.*, conference.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, exchange. [con, mūtō.]

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, win.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*, steadfastness. [con, stant- (of pres. part. of stō), ia.]

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take care.

dīgnitās, -ātis, *f.*, dignity. [dīgno-, tās.]

doleō, -ēre, -uī, dolitūrus, grieve.

elephantus, -ī, m., elephant.

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., Epirus.

ferē, adv., almost.

fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful.

Hēraclēa,-ae, f., Heraclea.

honestās, -ātis, f., uprightness.

impleō, -ēre, -ēv⁻ -ētus, fill. [in, pleō.]

inquit, says.

improbus, -a, -um, bad. [in, probus.]

īnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, follow. [in, sequor.]

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite.

laetitia,-ae,f.,joy. [laeto-, tia.]

mandō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus,intrust.

medicus, -ī, m., physician.

modō, adv., only, just now.

mūnus, -eris, n., gift.

obsequor, -ī, -secūtus, follow. [ob, sequor.]

octingentī, eight hundred.

perītus, -a, -um, skilful.

perturbō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus,throw into confusion. [per, turbō.]

postquam, after.

quālis, -e, of what kind ?

quamquam, although.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry back. [re, portō.]

repudiō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, reject.

revertō, -ere, reversus, come back. [re, vertō.]

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask.

Samnītes, -um, m., Samnites.

surdus, -a, -um, deaf.

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēc- tūrus, rise.

tamen, adv., yet, nevertheless.

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m., Taren- tines, inhabitantsof Tarentum.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, bestow.

usque, adv., even.

venēnum, -ī, n., poison.

417. *Julius Caesar.*

[Adapted from Eutropius, Book VI. 17–25.]

1. Annō urbis conditae[1] sēscentēsimō nōnāgēsimō ter- tiō Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul est factus. Is prīmō[2] vīcit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī appellantur, deinde vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad Oceanum Britannicum prōcēssit. Domuit autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Oceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmā-

---

[1] *Of the founded city, i.e.* since the founding of the city.

[2] *First, at first.*

nōrum cōgnitum erat, et eōs quoque victōs obsidibus acceptīs stīpendiāriōs fēcit.   Galliae[1] autem tribūtum imperāvit, Germānōsque multīs proeliīs vīcit.

2. Hinc iam bellum cīvīle successit quō populī Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta est.   Caesar enim rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit pōscere alterum[2] cōnsulātum.   Contrādictum est[3] ā Marcellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque[4] dīmissīs exercitibus ad urbem redīre.   Propter quam[5] iniūriam ab Ariminō,[6] ubi mīlitēs suōs habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit.   Cōnsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit.   Ibi Pompēiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

3. Caesar vacuam[7] urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. Inde Hispāniās[8] petiit.   Ibi Pompēī exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit.   Inde regressus in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum Pompēium dīmicāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, ēvāsit tamen quia nocte interveniente Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar, nec Pompēium scīre vincere, et illō tantum diē sē potuisse superārī.   Deinde in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum ingentibus cōpiīs dīmicāvērunt.

4. Numquam Rōmānae cōpiae neque[9] māiōrēs neque

---

[1] Dative, but translate *from*.   [2] *A second.*

[3] It was spoken against, *i.e.* oppositio 1 was made.

[4] Supply Caesar and est.

[5] A relative at the beginning of a sentence should sometimes be translated as a demonstrative.

[6] From the vicinity of Ariminum. *From Ariminum* would be the abl. without prep.

[7] *i.e.* with senate and nobility gone.

[8] Plural because Spain was divided by the Romans into two provinces.

[9] After numquam, neque . . . neque must be translated *either . . . or.*

meliōribus ducibus convēnerant. Pūgnātum est diū et ācriter, victusque[1] ad postrēmum Pompēius et castra ēius dīrepta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandrīam petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cui tūtor ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenīlem ēius aetātem, acciperet auxilia. Quī fortūnam magis quam amīcitiam secūtus[2] occīdit Pompēium, caput ēius et anulum Caesarī mīsit. Quō cōnspectō Caesar lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur.

5. Mox Caesar Alexandrīam vēnit. Ipsī[3] quoque Ptolemaeus[4] parāre voluit īnsidiās, quā causā rēgī bellum illātum est. Eō victō Caesar Alexandrīā potītus rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaeī sorōrī. Inde rediēns Caesar Pharnacem, quī multās populī Rōmānī prōvinciās occupābat, proeliō vīcit et ad mortem coēgit. Inde Rōmam regressus tertiō[5] sē cōnsulem fēcit. Inde in Africam profectus est, ubi multī nōbilēs, quōrum ducēs prīncipēs erant reī pūblicae, bellum reparāverant. Contrā hōs commissō proeliō victor fuit Caesar. Ducēs eōrum aut ipsī sē occīdērunt aut ā Caesare interfectī sunt.

6. Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus quārtō[6] sē cōnsulem fēcit et statim ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pompēī fīliōs, Gnaeum et Sextum, quī ingēns bellum reparāverant, apud Mundam cīvitātem māgnō proeliō superāvit. Ex Pompēī fīliīs māior occīsus est, minor fūgit. Inde Caesar bellīs cīvīlibus tōtō orbe compositīs Rōmam rediit. Agere īnsolentius coepit et contrā cōnsuētūdinem Rōmānae lībertātis.[7] Haec cum diūtius ferre nōn possent coniūrātiōnem in eum fēcērunt multī senātōrēs

---

[1] Supply **est**. [2] *Following*, i.e. paying respect to.
[3] Supply **Caesarī**. [4] The king of Egypt mentioned above.
[5] *For the third time.* [6] *For the fourth time.*
[7] *i.e.* contrary to the free institutions of the Romans.

equitēsque Rōmānī.   Prīncipēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs
duo Brūtī, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī prīmus Rōmae cōnsul
fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, Gāius Cassius et Servilius Casca.
Ergō Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter cēterōs vēnisset ad
cūriam, vīgintī tribus vulneribus cōnfossus est.

adversum, *prep.*, against.

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, age.

Alexandrīa, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria.

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, Alps.

anulus, -ī, *m.*, ring.

Ariminum, -ī, *n.*, Ariminum, a
town.

Britannī, -ōrum, *m.*, Britons.

Britannicus, -a, -um, British.

Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato.

cīvīlis, -e, civil.

Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra.

coepī, coepisse (*no present*),
began.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,
engage in.   [con, mittō.]

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,
settle, finish.   [con, pōnō.]

cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus,
stab.   [con, fodiō.]

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.
[con, iūrā-, tiō.]

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spec-
tus, see.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, custom.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, consulship.

contrādīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus,
speak against. [contra, dīcō.]

dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,
dismiss, disband. [dis, mit-
tō.]

dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus,
plunder. [dis, rapiō.]

domō, -āre, domuī, domitus,
subdue.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore.

ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, get
away. [ē, vādō.]

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,
drive out. [ex, pellō.]

ferē, *adv.*, almost.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour
out.

Gāius Cassius, Gāī Cassī, *m.*,
Gaius Cassius.

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, Germans.

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus.

Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m.*, Helvetians.

hinc, *adv.*, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, order,
command, be emperor.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, en-
ter. [in, gradior.]

insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a plot.

insolenter, *adv.*, arrogantly.

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-
tūrus, come between, inter-
vene. [inter, veniō.]

iuvenīlis, -e, youthful.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

Lūcius Bibulus, Lūcī Bibulī, *m.*, Lucius Bibulus.

Marcellus, -ī, *m.*, Marcellus.

Munda, -ae, *f.*, Munda.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change.

nē . . . quidem, not . . . even.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*, the nobility. [gnō-, bili-, tās.]

numquam, *adv.*, nowhere.

Oceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean.

obsēs, -idis, *m.*, hostage.

orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, world.

Pharnacēs, -is, *m.*, Pharnaces.

Pharsālus, -ī, *f.*, Pharsalus.

Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, Pompey.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, *m.*, Ptolemy.

pōscō, -ere, popōscī, demand.

posterus, -a, -um, following.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssūrus, go forward to. [pro, cēdō.]

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed.

reparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, renew. [re, parō.]

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sequanians.

Servīlius Casca, Servīlī Cascae, *m.*, Servilius Casca.

Sextus, -ī, *m.*, Sextus.

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, tributary.

succēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus, follow. [sub, cēdō.]

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless.

tantum, *adv.*, only.

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.*, tribute.

tūtor, -ōris, *m.*, guardian.

ūniversus, -a, -um, all.

usque, *adv.*, even.

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant.

NOUNS.

418.   **First or *a*-Declension.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	mēnsa, *a table.*	mēnsae, *tables.*
G.	mēnsae, *of a table.*	mēnsārum, *of tables.*
D.	mēnsae, *to* or *for a table.*	mēnsīs, *to* or *for tables.*
Ac.	mēnsam, *table.*	mēnsās, *tables.*
V.	mēnsa, *thou table.*	mēnsae, *ye tables.*
Ab.	mēnsā, *from, by, with,* etc., *a table.*	mēnsīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *tables.*

419.   **Second or *o*-Declension.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	servus	servī	bellum	bella
G.	servī	servōrum	bellī	bellōrum
D.	servō	servīs	bellō	bellīs
Ac.	servum	servōs	bellum	bella
V.	serve	servī	bellum	bella
Ab.	servō	servīs	bellō	' bellīs

SINGULAR.

N.	puer	ager	vir
G.	puerī	agrī	virī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō
Ac.	puerum	agrum	virum
V.	puer	ager	vir
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō

PLURAL.

N.	puerī	agrī	virī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
D.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
V.	puerī	agrī	virī
Ab.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

420. Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.

N., V.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
Ab.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

PLURAL.

N., Ac., V.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D., Ab.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

SINGULAR.

N., V.	voluptās	pēs	cūstōs
G.	voluptātis	pedis	cūstōdis
D.	voluptātī	pedī	cūstōdī
Ac.	voluptātem	pedem	cūstōdem
Ab.	voluptāte	pede	cūstōde

PLURAL.

N., Ac., V.	voluptātēs	pedēs	cūstōdēs
G.	voluptātum	pedum	cūstōdum
D., Ab.	voluptātibus	pedibus	cūstōdibus

Liquid Stems.

SINGULAR.

N., V.	cōnsul	victor	virgō	corpus
G.	consulis	victōris	virginis	corporis
D.	cōnsulī	victōrī	virginī	corporī
Ac.	cōnsulem	victōrem	virginem	corpus
Ab.	cōnsule	victōre	virgine	corpore

PLURAL.

N., Ac., V.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	virginēs	corpora
G.	cōnsulum	victōrum	virginum	corporum
D., Ab.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	virginibus	corporibus

Stems in i.

SINGULAR.

N., V.	ignis	hostis	clādēs
G.	īgnis	hostis	clādis
D.	īgnī	hostī	clādī
Ac.	īgnem	hostem	clādem
Ab.	īgnī, -e	hoste	clāde

PLURAL.

N., V.	īgnēs	hostēs	clādēs
G.	īgnium	hostium	clādium
D., Ab.	īgnibus	hostibus	clādibus
Ac.	īgnēs, -īs	hostēs, -īs	clādēs, -īs

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
G.	maris	marium	animālis	animālium
D., Ab.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

Mixed Stems.

SINGULAR.

N., V.	nox	urbs	mōns
G.	noctis	urbis	montis
D.	noctī	urbī	montī
Ac.	noctem	urbem	montem
Ab.	nocte	urbe	monte

PLURAL.

N., V.	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
G.	noctium	urbium	montium
D., Ab.	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
Ac.	noctēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	montēs, -īs

421. **Fourth or *u*-Declension.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua.
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī (ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

422. **Fifth or *e*-Declension.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES.

423. First and Second Declension.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac. bonum	bonam	bonum
V. bone	bona	bonum
Ab. bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac. bonōs	bonās	bona
V. bonī	bonae	bona
Ab. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR.

N. miser	misera	miserum
G. miserī	miserae	miserī
D. miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac. miserum	miseram	miserum
V. miser	misera	miserum
Ab. miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL.

N. miserī	miserae	misera
G. miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D. miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac. miserōs	miserās	misera
V. miserī	miserae	misera
Ab. miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

SINGULAR.

N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
V.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL.

N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

424. Adjectives of Third Declension.

	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
G.		ācris			celeris	
D., Ab.		ācrī			celerī	
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere

	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
G.		ācrium			celerium	
D., Ab.		ācribus			celeribus	
Ac.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	celerēs (-īs)	celerēs (-īs)	celeria

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N., V.	brevis		breve	brevēs		brevia
G.		brevis			brevium	
D., Ab.		brevī			brevibus	
Ac.	brevem		breve	brevēs (-īs)		brevia

	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.			*Masculine. Feminine.*		*Neuter.*
N., V.		vēlōx			potēns	
G.		vēlōcis			potentis	
D.		vēlōcī			potentī	
Ac.	vēlōcem		vēlōx	potentem		potēns
Ab.		vēlōcī (-e)			potentī (-e)	

	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V.	vēlōcēs		vēlōcia	potentēs		potentia
G.		vēlōcium			potentium	
D., Ab.		vēlōcibus			potentibus	
Ac.	vēlōcēs (-īs)		vēlōcia	potentēs (-īs)		potentia

425.   *Declension of Comparatives.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.			*Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.*		
N., V.	cārior		cārius	cāriōrēs		cāriōra
G.		cāriōris			cāriōrum	
D.		cāriōrī			cāriōribus	
Ac.	cāriōrem		cārius	cāriōrēs (-īs)		cāriōra
Ab.		cāriōre *or* -ī			cāriōribus	

426.   *Irregular Adjectives.*

	SINGULAR.					
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural is regular.

	duo, *two.*			**trēs,** *three.*		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

427. Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy.*	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, *difficult.*	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, *like.*	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, *unlike.*	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
gracilis, *slender.*	gracilior.	grăcillimus.
humilis, *low.*	humilior.	humillimus.
exterus, *outward.*	exterior, *outer or more outward.*	extrēmus *and* extimus, *outermost or last.*
īnferus, *low.*	īnferior, *lower.*	īnfimus *and* īmus, *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	posterior, *later.*	postrēmus *and* postumus, *last.*
superus, *upper.*	superior, *higher.*	suprēmus *and* summus, *top of, highest.*
bonus, *good.*	melior, melius, *better.*	optimus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pēior, pēius, *worse.*	pessimus, *worst.*
māgnus, *great.*	māior, māius, *greater.*	māximus, *greatest.*
multus, *much.*	——, plūs,[1] *more.*	plūrimus, *most.*
multī, *many.*	plūrēs, plūra, *more.*	plūrimī, *most.*
parvus, *small.*	minor, minus, *smaller.*	minimus, *smallest.*
senex, *old.*	senior (māior nātū), *older, elder.*	māximus nātū, *oldest, eldest.*
iuvenis, *young.*	iūnior (minor nātū), *younger.*	minimus nātū, *youngest.*
prae, prō (prep., *before*).	prior, *former.*	prīmus, *first.*
prope (adv., *near*).	propior, *nearer.*	proximus, *nearest.*

[1] The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

428.   CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)
20. vīgintī
21. vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī
22. vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī
28. duodētrīgintā
29. ūndētrīgintā

30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā
90. nōnāgintā
100. centum
101. centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus
102. centum duo *or* centum et duo
200. ducentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī, -ae, -a
400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
700. septingentī, -ae, -a
800. octingentī, -ae, -a
900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
1000. mīlle
2000. duo mīlia
10,000. decem mīlia
100,000. centum mīlia

429.   ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. prīmus
2d. secundus
3d. tertius
4th. quārtus
5th. quīntus
6th. sextus
7th. septimus

8th. octāvus
9th. nōnus
10th. decimus
11th. ūndecimus
12th. duodecimus
13th. tertius decimus
14th. quārtus decimus

15th. quīntus decimus	30th. trīcēsimus
16th. sextus decimus	40th. quadrāgēsimus
17th. septimus decimus	50th. quīnquāgēsimus
18th. duodēvīcēsimus	60th. sexāgēsimus
19th. ūndēvīcēsimus	70th. septuāgēsimus
20th. vīcēsimus	80th. octōgēsimus
21st. vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus	90th. nōnāgēsimus
	100th. centēsimus
28th. duodētrīcēsimus	200th. ducentēsimus
29th. ūndētrīcēsimus	1000th. mīllēsimus

430. Personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. egŏ, *I.*	nōs, *we.*
G. meī, *of me.*	nostrum *or* nostrī, *of us.*
D. mihī (mī), *to, for me.*	nōbīs, *to, for us.*
Ac. mē, *me.*	nōs, *us.*
Ab. mē, *from, by, with,* etc., *me.*	nōbīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *us.*

SECOND PERSON.

N., V. tū, *(thou) you.*	vōs, *you.*
G. tuī, *of (thee) you.*	vestrum *or* vestrī, *of you.*
D. tibī, *to, for (thee) you.*	vōbīs, *to, for you.*
Ac. tē, *(thee) you.*	vōs, *you.*
Ab. tē, *from, by, with,* etc., *(thee) you.*	vōbīs, *from, by, with,* etc., *you.*

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N. ——	——
G. suī, *of him(self), her(self), it(self).*	suī, *of them(selves).*
D. sibī, *to, for him(self),* etc.	sibī, *to, for them(selves).*
Ac. sē, sēsē, *him(self),* etc.	sē, sēsē, *them(selves).*
Ab. sē, sēsē, *from, by, with,* etc., *him(self).*	sē, sēsē, *from, by, with,* etc., *them(selves).*

431. Demonstrative Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

	hīc, *this.*			ille, *that.*	
N. hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
G. hūius	hūius	hūius	illīus	illīus	illīus
D. huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Ac. hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Ab. hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

N. hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac. hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

SINGULAR. / **PLURAL.**

N. is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
G. ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

īdem, *same.*

N. īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem / (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
G. ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (iīsdem)		

SINGULAR. / **PLURAL.**

N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

432.   *Relative Pronoun.*

qui, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

433.   *Interrogative Pronoun.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

434.   *Indefinite Pronoun.*

SINGULAR.

N.	{ aliquis { aliquī	(aliquae) } aliqua }	aliquid
G.		alicūius	
D.		alicuī	
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.		aliquibus	
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.		aliquibus	

REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

435. Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**
Stem: **amā-.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		**Passive Voice.**	

PRESENT.

I love, am loving, do love, etc.		*I am loved,* etc.	
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris *or* -re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.		*I was loved,* etc.	
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris *or* -re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved,* etc.	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis *or* -re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT.

I have loved, I loved, etc.		*I have been (was) loved,* etc.			
amāvī	amāvimus		⌈ sum		⌈ sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis	amātus ⟨ es	amātī ⟨ estis
amāvit	amāvērunt *or* -re		⌊ est		⌊ sunt

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved, etc.   *I had been loved*, etc.

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus ⎰ eram	amātī ⎰ erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis	eram / erās / erat	erāmus / erātis / eraut
amāverat	amāverant		

amāveram amāverāmus   amātus { eram / erās / erat }   amātī { erāmus / erātis / eraut }
amāverās amāverātis
amāverat amāverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc.   *I shall have been loved*, etc.

amāverō amāverimus   amātus { erō / eris / erit }   amātī { erimus / eritis / erunt }
amāveris amāveritis
amāverit amāverint

Subjunctive.[1]

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris *or* -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris *or* -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim amāverimus   amātus { sim / sīs / sit }   amātī { sīmus / sītis / sint }
amāveris amāveritis
amāverit amāverint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem amāvissēmus   amātus { essem / essēs / esset }   amātī { essēmus / essētis / essent }
amāvissēs amāvissētis
amāvisset amāvissent

---

[1] No satisfactory translation for the subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. It must be learned from the exercises illustrating the uses of the subjunctive.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.

Imperative.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*	amāre, *be thou loved.*
amāte, *love ye.*	amāminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*	amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātō, *he shall love.*	amātor, *he shall be loved.*
amātōte, *you shall love.*	
amantō, *they shall love.*	amantor, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive.

PRES.	amāre, *to love.*	amārī, *to be loved.*	
PERF.	amāvisse, *to have loved.*	amātus esse, *to have been loved.*	
FUT.	amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*	amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*	

Participles.

PRES.	amāns, -antis, *loving.*	PERF.	amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved.*
FUT.	amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*		

Gerund.	*Gerundive.*
G. amandī, *of loving.*	amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*
D. amandō, *for loving.*	
Ac. amandum, *loving.*	
AB. amandō, *by loving.*	

Supine.

Ac.	amātum, *to love.*
AB.	amātū, *to love.*

436. **Second Conjugation.**

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus,** *have, hold.*[1]

Stem: **habē-.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	

PRESENT.

I hold, etc.		*I am held*, etc.	
habeō	habēmus	habeor	habēmur
habēs	habētis	habēris *or* -re	habēminī
habet	habent	habētur	habentur .

IMPERFECT.

I held, was holding, etc.		*I was held*, etc.	
habēbam	habēbāmus	habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbās	habēbātis	habēbāris *or* -re	habēbāminī
habēbat	habēbant	habēbātur	habēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall hold, etc.		*I shall be held*, etc.	
habēbō	habēbimus	habēbor	habēbimur
habēbis	habēbitis	habēberis *or* -re	habēbiminī
habēbit	habēbunt	habēbitur	habēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have held, etc.		*I have been held*, etc.			
habuī	habuimus	habitus {	sum	habitī {	sumus
habuistī	habuistis		es		estis
habuit	habuērunt *or* -re		est		sunt

---

[1] The meaning *have* is the more common, but *hold* is better adapted to the paradigm.

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

PLUPERFECT.

I had held, etc.   *I had been held*, etc.

habueram	habuerāmus
habuerās	habuerātis
habuerat	habuerant

habitus { eram, erās, erat }   habitī { erāmus, erātis, erant }

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have held, etc.   *I shall have been held*, etc.

habuerō	habuerimus
habueris	habueritis
habuerit	habuerint

habitus { erō, eris, erit }   habitī { erimus, eritis, erunt }

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

habeam	habeāmus	habear	habeāmur
habeās	habeātis	habeāris *or* -re	habeāminī
habeat	habeant	habeātur	habeantur

IMPERFECT.

habērem	habērēmus	habērer	habērēmur
habērēs	habērētis	habērēris *or* -re	habērēminī
habēret	habērent	habērētur	habērentur

PERFECT.

habuerim	habuerimus
habueris	habueritis
habuerit	habuerint

habitus { sim, sīs, sit }   habitī { sīmus, sītis, sint }

PLUPERFECT.

habuissem	habuissēmus
habuissēs	habuissētis
habuisset	habuissent

habitus { essem, essēs, esset }   habitī { essēmus, essētis, essent }

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

Imperative.

PRESENT.

habē, *hold thou.*   habēre, *be thou held.*
habēte, *hold ye.*   habēminī, *be ye held.*

FUTURE.

habētō, *thou shalt hold.*   habētor, *thou shalt be held.*
habētō, *he shall hold.*   habētor, *he shall be held.*
habētōte, *you shall hold.*
habentō, *they shall hold.*   habentor, *they shall be held.*

Infinitive.

PRES. habēre, *to hold.*   habērī, *to be held.*
PERF. habuisse, *to have held.*   habitus esse, *to have been held.*
FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be   habitum īrī, *to be about to be
        about to hold.*   held.*

Participles.

PRES. habēns, -entis, *holding.*   PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *having
FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um, *about   been held.*
        to hold.*

Gerund.   *Gerundive.*

G. habendī, *of holding.*   habendus, -a, -um, *to be held.*
D. habendō, *for holding.*
AC. habendum, *holding.*
AB. habendō, *by holding.*

Supine.

AC. habitum, *to hold.*
AB. habitū, *to hold.*

Third Conjugation.

437. Principal Parts: **Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus.**

Stem: **dūcĕ.**

Indicative.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">**Active Voice.**</td><td colspan="2">**Passive Voice.**</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">**PRESENT.**</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*I lead, am leading,* etc.</td><td colspan="2">*I am led,* etc.</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcō</td><td>dūcimus</td><td>dūcor</td><td>dūcimur</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcis</td><td>dūcitis</td><td>dūceris *or* -re</td><td>dūcimini</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcit</td><td>dūcunt</td><td>dūcitur</td><td>dūcuntur</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">**IMPERFECT.**</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*I led, was leading,* etc.</td><td colspan="2">*I was led, was being led,* etc.</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcēbam</td><td>dūcēbāmus</td><td>dūcēbar</td><td>dūcēbāmur</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcēbās</td><td>dūcēbātis</td><td>dūcēbāris *or* -re</td><td>dūcēbāminī</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcēbat</td><td>dūcēbant</td><td>dūcēbātur</td><td>dūcēbantur</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">**FUTURE.**</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*I shall lead,* etc.</td><td colspan="2">*I shall be led,* etc.</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcam</td><td>dūcēmus</td><td>dūcar</td><td>dūcēmur</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcēs</td><td>dūcētis</td><td>dūcēris *or* -re</td><td>dūcēminī</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūcet</td><td>dūcent</td><td>dūcētur</td><td>dūcentur</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">**PERFECT.**</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*I led, have led,* etc.</td><td colspan="2">*I was led, have been led,* etc.</td></tr>
<tr><td>dūxī</td><td>dūximus</td><td rowspan="3">ductus</td><td>sum
es
est</td></tr>
</table>

dūxī   dūximus

dūxistī   dūxistis

dūxit   dūxērunt *or* -re

ductus { sum / es / est   ductī { sumus / estis / sunt

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	

PLUPERFECT.

I had led, etc.		*I had been led*, etc.	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus { eram	ductī { erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	{ erās	{ erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	{ erat	{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have led, etc.		*I shall have been led*, etc.	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus { erō	ductī { erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	{ eris	{ eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint	{ erit	{ erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

IMPERFECT.

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

PERFECT.

dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus { sim	ductī { sīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	{ sīs	{ sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	{ sit	{ sint

PLUPERFECT.

dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus { essem	ductī { essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	{ essēs	{ essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	{ esset	{ essent

| Active Voice. | Passive Voice. |

Imperative.

PRESENT.

| dūc(e),[1] *lead thou.* | dūcere, *be thou led.* |
| dūcite, *lead ye.* | dūciminī, *be ye led.* |

FUTURE.

dūcitō, *thou shalt lead.*	dūcitor, *thou shalt be led.*
dūcitō, *he shall lead.*	dūcitor, *he shall be led.*
dūcitōte, *ye shall lead.*	
dūcuntō, *they shall lead.*	dūcuntor, *they shall be led.*

Infinitive.

PRES: dūcere, *to lead.*	dūcī, *to be led.*
PERF. dūxisse, *to have led.*	ductus esse, *to have been led.*
FUT. ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*	ductum īrī, *to be about to be led.*

Participles.

| PRES. dūcēns, -entis, *leading.* | PERF. ductus, -a, -um, *having been led.* |
| FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.* | |

Gerund.   Gerundive.

G. dūcendī, *of leading.*	dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*
D. dūcendō, *for leading.*	
Ac. dūcendum, *leading.*	
AB. dūcendō, *by leading.*	

Supine.

| Ac. ductum, *to lead.* |
| AB. ductū, *to lead.* |

---

[1] Dūce would be the regular form, but the imperatives of dūcō, dīcō, faciō, and ferō lose the ending -e.

Fourth Conjugation.

438. Principal Parts: **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**.

Stem: **audī**.

Indicative.

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

PRESENT.

I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.   *I am heard*, etc.

audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris *or* -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I heard, was hearing, did hear, etc.   *I was heard*, etc.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall hear, etc.   *I shall be heard*, etc.

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

I have heard, I heard, etc.   *I have been (was) heard*, etc.

audīvī	audīvimus		sum		sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus {	es	audītī {	estis
audīvit	audīvērunt *or* -re		est		sunt

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard, etc.   *I had been heard*, etc.

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	eram	audītī	erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis		erās		erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard, etc.   *I shall have been heard*, etc.

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	erō	audītī	erimus
audīveris	audīveritis		eris		eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris *or* ·re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris *or* ·re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

Active Voice.   **Passive Voice.**

Imperative.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*   audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīte, *hear ye.*   audīminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*   audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*   audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*   audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

Infinitive.

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*   audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*   audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be*   audītum īrī, *to be about to be*
     about to hear.   *heard.*

Participles.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*   PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard,*
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um,   *having been heard.*
     about to hear.

Gerund.   Gerundive.

G.   audiendī, *of hearing.*   audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
D.   audiendō, *for hearing.*
Ac.   audiendum, *hearing.*
AB.   audiendō, *by hearing.*

Supine.

Ac.   audītum, *to hear.*
AB.   audītū, *to hear.*

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.

439. Verbs of the third conjugation in -iō have some forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. Before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē* they retain the *i* of the stem, but lose it elsewhere, except in the gerund and participle.

Principal Parts : **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

Stem : **capi.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	

PRESENT.

I take, am taking, do take, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I took, was taking, did take, etc.	*I was taken*, etc.
capiēbam, etc.	capiēbar, etc.

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

PERFECT.

I have taken, took, etc.	*I have been (was) taken*, etc.
cēpī, etc.	captus sum, etc.

Active Voice.	**Passive Voice.**

<center>PLUPERFECT.</center>

I had taken, etc.	· *I had been taken*, etc.
cēperam, etc.	captus eram, etc.

<center>FUTURE PERFECT.</center>

I shall have taken, etc.	*I shall have been taken*, etc.
cēperō, etc.	captus erō, etc.

Subjunctive.

<center>PRESENT.</center>

capiam	capiāmus		capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis		capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiat	capiant		capiātur	capiantur

<center>IMPERFECT.</center>

caperem, etc.	caperer, etc.

<center>PERFECT.</center>

cēperim, etc.	captus sim, etc.

<center>PLUPERFECT.</center>

cēpissem, etc.	captus essem, etc.

Imperative.

<center>PRESENT.</center>

cape, *take (thou)*.	capere, *be (thou) taken*.
capite, *take (ye)*.	capiminī, *be (ye) taken*.

<center>FUTURE.</center>

capitō, *thou shalt take*.	capitor, *thou shalt be taken*.
capitō, *he shall take*.	capitor, *he shall be taken*.
capitōte, *ye shall take*.	
capiuntō, *they shall take*.	capiuntor, *they shall be taken*.

Active Voice.	**Passive Voice.**

Infinitive.

PRES.	capere, *to take.*	capī, *to be taken.*
PERF.	cēpisse, *to have taken.*	captus esse, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	captūrus esse, *to be about to take.*	captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

Participles.

PRES.	capiēns, -ientis, *taking.*	PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken, having been taken.*
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*	

Gerund.   Gerundive.

G.	capiendī, *of taking.*	capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*
D.	capiendō, *for taking.*	
Ac.	capiendum, *taking.*	
AB.	capiendō, *by taking.*	

Supine.

Ac.	captum, *to take.*
AB.	captū, *to take.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

440.   Principal Parts: **Sum, esse, fui.**

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
I am, etc.		*I was*, etc.	
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus
es	estis	erās	erātis
est	sunt	erat	erant

FUTURE.		PERFECT.	
I shall be, etc.		*I was, have been*, etc.	
erō	erimus	fuī	fuimus
eris	eritis	fuistī	fuistis
erit	erunt	fuit	fuērunt *or* -ēre

PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
I had been, etc.		*I shall have been*, etc.	
fueram	fuerāmus	fuerō	fuerimus
fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

es, *be thou.* este, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

estō, *thou shalt be.* estōte, *you shall be.*
estō, *he shall be.* suntō, *they shall be.*

Infinitive.

PRES. esse, *to be.* PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*

FUT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{futūrus esse,} \\ \text{fore,} \end{array} \right\}$ *to be about to be.*

Participle.

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

Compounds of Sum.

441. Principal Parts: **Possum, posse, potuī,** *be able.*

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint

IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent

FUTURE.

poterō

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
potuī	potuerim

PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
potueram	potuissem

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō

Infinitive.

PRES. posse   PERF. potuisse

Participle.

PRES. potēns, -entis

442.   Principal Parts:

Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *be profitable.*

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
PRESENT.		**PRESENT.**	
prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsitis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint

IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
prōderam	prōdessem

FUTURE.

prōderō

PERFECT.		**PERFECT.**	
prōfuī		prōfuerim	

PLUPERFECT.		**PLUPERFECT.**	
prōfueram		prōfuissem	

FUTURE PERFECT.
prōfuerō

Imperative.

PRESENT.		**FUTURE.**	
prōdes	prōdeste	prōdestō	prōdestōte

Infinitive.

PRES. prōdesse   PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

Participle.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

443.   Principal Parts:

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, *be more willing, prefer.*

Indicative.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam

PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative.

PRES.	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
FUT.	——	nōlītō, *etc.*	——

Infinitive.

| PRES. | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

Participle.

| PRES. | volēns | nōlēns | —— |

444. Principal Parts : **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *bear, carry.*

	Active.		**Passive.**	

Indicative.

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris *or* -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Subjunctive.

PRES.	feram		ferar	
IMPERF.	ferrem		ferrer	
PERF.	tulerim		lātus sim	
PLUP.	tulissem		lātus essem	

Imperative.

Pres.	fer[1]	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive.

PRES.	ferre		ferrī	
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse	
FUT.	lātūrus esse		lātum īrī	

Participles.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus		

[1] See note on page 240.

Gerund.		·	*Gerundive.*
G.	ferendī		ferendus
D.	ferendō		
Ac.	ferendum		
Ab.	ferendō		

Supine.

Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

445. Principal Parts: **Eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itūrus,** *go.*

Fīō, fierī,[1] **factus,** *be made, become.*

Indicative.

Pres.	eō	īmus		fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis		fīs	fītis
	it	eunt		fit	fīunt
Imperf.	ībam			fīēbam	
Fut.	ībō			fīam	
Perf.	iī (īvī)			factus sum	
Plup.	ieram			factus eram	
Fut. Perf.	ierō			factus erō	

Subjunctive.

Pres.	eam		fīam
Imperf.	īrem		fierem
Perf.	ierim (īverim)		factus sim
Plup.	īssem (īvissem, iissem)		factus essem

Imperative.

Pres.	ī	īte		fī	fīte
Fut.	ītō	ītōte		fītō	fītōtē
	ītō	euntō		fītō	fīuntō

[1] The ī in **fīō** is long except in the present infinitive, the third person singular of the present indicative, and in the imperfect subjunctive.

Infinitive.

PRES.	īre	fierī
PERF.	īsse (īvisse, iisse)	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īrī

Participles.

PRES.	iēns, GEN. euntis	PERF. factus
FUT.	itūrus	

Gerund.[1]   Gerundive.

G.	eundī	AC.	eundum	faciendus
D.	eundō	AB.	eundō	

Supine.

AC. itum   AB. itū

---

[1] The gerundive of eō occurs in the neuter, eundum.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

[Related Latin words occurring in this book are added in square brackets.]

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.		*indef.*	= indefinite.
acc.	= accusative.		*interr.*	= interrogative.
adj.	= adjective.		*m.*	= masculine.
adv.	= adverb.		*n.*	= neuter.
c.	= common gender.		*nom.*	= nominative.
cf.	= compare.		*pass.*	= passive.
comp.	= comparative.		*part.*	= participle.
conj.	= conjunction.		*perf.*	= perfect.
dat.	= dative.		*pl.*	= plural.
dem.	= demonstrative.		*pron.*	= pronoun.
dep.	= deponent.		*rel.*	= relative.
f.	= feminine.		*sing.*	= singular.
gen.	= genitive.		*subst.*	= substantive.
indecl.	= indeclinable.		*w.*	= with.

A.

ā, ab, *prep.* (*w. abl.*), from, by.

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away. [ab + duco.]

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be absent, be distant, be away. [ab + sum.]

āc (also atque), *conj.*, and.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, accept, receive. [ad + capiō.]

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accuse.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, quick.

Achillēs, -is, *m.*, Achilles, *a Greek hero.*

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply.

ad, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), to, for, near.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, wonder at, admire.

adsum, -esse, affuī (adf-), affutūrus (adf-), be present, assist. [ad + sum.]

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach. [ad + ven (of veniō) + tus.]

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs, build.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, sick.

aequitās, -tātis, equity, fairness. [aequus.]

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.,* equal, fair. [**aequitās.**]

Agamemnōn, -onis, *m.,* Agamemnon, *a Greek hero.*

ager, -grī, *m.,* field.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do, act.

agricola, -ae, *m.,* farmer. [**ager.**]

Alba, -ae, *f.,* Alba, *an ancient city in Italy.*

Albānus, -a, -um, *adj.,* Alban; *m.,* an Alban. [**Alba+ānus.**]

aliquis, -qua, -quid, (*and* **aliquī, -qua, -quod**), *indef. pron.,* some, somebody, something.

alius, -a, -ud, (*gen.* **alīus,** *dat.* **aliī**), *adj.,* other, another; **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another.

alter, -era, -erum, (*gen.* **alterīus,** *dat.* **alterī**), *adj.,* one (*of two*), the other (*of two*).

altus, -a, -um, *adj.,* high, deep.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.,* friendship. [**amīcī** (for **amīco**) + **tia.**]

amīcus, -ī, *m.,* friend. [**amō, amīcitia.**]

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, lose. [**ā + mittō.**]

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love. [**amīcus, amīcitia.**]

ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enlarge.

ancilla, -ae, *f.,* maid-servant.

Ancus, -ī, *m.,* Ancus Martius, *a Roman king.*

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.,* narrow.

animal, -ālis, *n.,* animal.

animus, -ī, *m.,* spirit, mind.

annus, -ī, *m.,* year.

ante, *prep.* (*with acc.*), before.

appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, appear, be clear.

appellō, -āre, -avī, -ātus, call.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approach.

apud, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), near, among, with.

aqua, -ae, *f.,* water.

aquila, -ae, *f.,* eagle.

arbor, -oris, *f.,* tree.

ariēs, arietis, *m.,* ram, battering ram.

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.,* arms. [**armō.**]

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arm, equip. ·[**arma.**]

ars, artis, *f.,* art.

arx, arcis, *f.,* citadel.

Asia, -ae, *f.,* Asia.

asinus, -ī, *m.,* ass, donkey.

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Athens.

Athēniēnsis, -e., *adj.,* Athenian; *m.,* an Athenian. [**Athēnae.**]

atque (also **āc**), *conj.,* and.

auctor, -ōris, *m.,* author. [**augeō, auctōritās.**]

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.,* influence, authority. [**auctor, augeō.**]

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase, enlarge. [**auctor, auctōritās.**]

aurum, -ī, *n.,* gold.

aut, *conj.,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.,* but, however.

auxilium, -ī, *n.,* help, assistance.

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus,

turn from *or* away. [ā + vertō.]

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

B.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.

bene, *adv.*, well. [bonus.]

beneficium, -ī, *n.*, kind act, favor, benefit. [bene, faciō.]

bestia, -ae, *f.*, beast, wild beast.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good.

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.

C.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, calamity, disaster.

canis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, dog.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, capture. [captīvus.]

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, captive, prisoner. [capiō.]

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear.

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, Catiline, *a Roman.*

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause; *abl.*, causā, *used as prep. w. gen.*, because of, for the sake of.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, celebrated.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conceal, hide.

centēsimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral*, hundredth. [centum.]

centum, *indecl. numeral*, hundred.

certāmen, -minis, *n.*, strife, struggle, combat.

cēterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, other, rest of. (*Not used in m. sing.*)

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero, *a Roman.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, put around, surround. [circum + dō.]

cīvis, -is, *m.*, citizen. [cīvitās.]

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state. [cīvis.]

clādēs, -is, *f.*, loss, disaster, defeat.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, illustrious, famous.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, close, enclose.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, collect, compel, force. [co(n) + ago.]

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, station. [locus.]

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion.

comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, seize, arrest.

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, crush, check.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, depart, go.

concordia, -ae, *f.*, concord, harmony.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,

found (a city or town). [con + dō.]

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus, bring *or* carry together ; sē cōnferre, betake one's self, go. [con + ferō.]

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, finish. [con + faciō.]

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw together, cast. [con + iaciō.]

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conspire ; *perf. part.*, conspirator.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, try.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, obtain, attain (follow and catch). [con + sequor.]

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, preserve. [con + servō.]

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, set, establish, decide.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *head of the Roman republic.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, strive, hastened.

contrā, *prep. (w. acc.)*, against.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come together, assemble, convene.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together. [con + vocō.]

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance ; *pl.*, forces (*of soldiers*), troops.

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, *a Greek city.*

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*).

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, corrupt, destroy, bribe.

cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create, elect.

cum, *prep. (w. abl.)*, with ; *conj.*, when, since, although.

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, wish.

cūr, *adv.*, why ?

cūria, -ae, *f.*, senate-house.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursūrus, run. [cursus.]

cursus, ūs, *m.*, course, race.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, guard. [cūstōs.]

cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, keeper.

Cyclōps, -ōpis, *m.*, Cyclops, *a huge one-eyed giant.*

D.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, condemn.

Dārēus, -ī, *m.*, Darius, *a Persian king.*

dē, *prep. (w. abl.)*, about, concerning.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, owe, ought.

dēbilis, -e, *adj.*, weak.

decem, *indecl. numeral*, ten. [decimus.]

dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, decide, decree.

decimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral*, tenth. [decem.]

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, -fēnsus, defend.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, carry away, report. [dē + ferō.]

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tired.

deinde, *adv.*, then, next.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, delight, please.

dēleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy.

deus, -ī, *m.*, god.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (*hand, etc.*).

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.

diēs, diēī, *m.* (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.

difficilis, -e, *adj.*, difficult, hard.

dīrigō, -ere, dīrēxī, dīrēctus, direct.

dis-, *inseparable prefix*, apart; cf. dis-cēdō; *also* un-; cf. dis-similis.

discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus, withdraw.

discordia, -ae, *f.*, discord, disagreement.

dissimilis, -e, *adj.*, unlike. [dis + similis.]

diū, *adv.*, long.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, give. [dōnum.]

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach.

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, cunning.

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift. [dō.]

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt.

ducentī, -ae, -a, *cardinal numeral*, two hundred. [duŏ, centum.]

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead. [dux.]

duŏ, -ae, -ŏ, *adj.*, two.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard.

dux, ducis, *m.*, leader. [dūcō.]

E.

ē, ex, *prep.* (*w. abl.*), out of.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, educate, bring up. [dux, dūcō.]

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring *or* carry out. [ē + ferō.]

egŏ, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.

enim, *conj.*, *postpositive*, for.

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus, go.

Epaminōndās, -ae, *m.*, Epaminondas, *a Theban general.*

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.

eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry. [equus.]

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. [eques.]

et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam, *conj.*, even, also.

ex (ē), *prep.* (*w. abl.*), out of.

exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, go out *or* away.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, storm, take by storm.

exsilium, -ī, *n.*, exile, banishment.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, expect, wait for.

F.

Fābricius, -ī, *m.*, Fabricius, *a Roman general.*

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story.

facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy; facile, *as adv.*, easily. [faciō.]

facinus, -oris, *n.*, deed, crime. [facio.]

facio, facere, fēci, factus, do, make. [facilis, facinus.]

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, bring, carry.

ferōx, ferōcis, *adj.*, fierce, war-like.

fidēs, fideī, *f.*, confidence, fidelity.

fīdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful.

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.

fīnis, -is, *m.*, end ; *pl.*, territory.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neigh-boring ; *m. pl.*, neighbors. [fīnis.]

fīō, fierī, factus, be made, be done, become.

flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river. [fluvius.]

fluvius, -ī, *m.*, river. [flūmen.]

fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely. [fortis.]

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*, bravery, courage. [fortis.]

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, good fortune.

forum, -ī, *n.*, forum, public square.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, break.

frāter, frātris, *m*, brother.

fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, fraud.

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain. [fruor.]

fruor, fruī, fruitus *and* frūctus, enjoy.

frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee. [fugō.]

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, put to flight. [fugiō.]

G.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, *a country nearly the same as modern France.*

gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen.

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul (*inhabitant of* Gallia.)

gēns, gentis, *f.*, race, tribe. [genus.]

genus, generis, *n.*, race, family, kind, sort. [gēns.]

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, carry on, do ; bellum gerere, wage war.

gigās, gigantis, *m.*, giant.

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. [Graecus.]

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek ; Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek. [Graecia.]

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, grateful, pleasant.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, serious.

grex, gregis, *m.*, flock.

H.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, live in, inhabit. [habeō.]

haedus, -ī, *m.*, kid.

Hector, -oris, *m.*, Hector, *a Trojan.*

Helena, -ae, *f.*, Helen.

herī, *adv.*, yesterday.

hīc, haec, hōc, *dem. pron.*, this.

hodiē, *adv.*, to-day. [**hōc diē**.]

Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer, *the Greek poet.*

homō, hominis, *m.*, man, human being.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horace, Horatius.

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.

hospes, hospitis, *m* , guest, host.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.

I (vowel).

ibi, *adv.*, there.

īdem, eadem, īdem, *dem. pron.*, the same. [**is.**]

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

īgnōscō, -ere, īgnōvī, īgnōtūrus, pardon, forgive.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, impede, hinder.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, emperor, commander, general. [**imperium.**]

imperium, -ī, *n.*, power, empire. [**imperātor.**]

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack.

in, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), into, to, against; (*w. abl.*), in, on.

incendium, -ī, *n.*, burning, fire. [**incendō.**]

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, set on fire, burn. [**incendium.**]

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, incite, urge on.

incola, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, uninjured, safe.

inde, *adv.*, thence, from there.

indicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, declare. [**in + dīcō.**]

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead in *or* into, induce. [**in + dūcō.**]

industria, -ae, *f.*, industry, diligence.

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, carry to, bring to, inflict.

ingenium, -ī, *n.*, nature, ability.

ingēns, ingentis, *adj.*, huge, vast.

ingredior, ingredī, ingressus, go into, enter.

iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus, throw upon, suggest. [**in + iaciō.**]

inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, enemy. [**in + amīcus.**]

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury.

īnsīgnis, -e, *adj.*, remarkable. [**signum.**]

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, comprehend, understand.

inter, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), among, between.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay. [**inter + faciō.**]

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, question.

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, find (come to). [**in + veniō.**]

ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pron.*, my, your, him, *etc.*, self.

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that.

iste, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, that (*of yours.*)

ita, *adv.*, so.

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

itaque, *adv.,* therefore. [ita.]

iter, itineris, *n.,* journey, march, route.

I (consonant).

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, iacitūrus, lie, be prostrate.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, throw.

iam, *adv.,* already.

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.,* Janiculum, *a hill on the right bank of the Tiber.*

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, command, order.

iūnior, -ius, *adj.* (*comp.* of **iuvenis,** *contracted for* **iuvenior**), younger.

iuvenis, -e, *adj.,* young; *as a noun,* youth, young man.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, assist, aid.

L.

labor, -ōris, *m.,* labor, toil.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, *f.,* Lacedaemon, Sparta, *a Greek city.*

Lacedaemonius, -ī, *m.,* Lacedaemonian, Spartan.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.,* glad, jolly.

lapis, lapidis, *m.,* stone.

Latīnus, -a, -um, *adj.,* Latin; *as a noun,* **Latīnus, -ī,** *m.,* a Latin.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.,* broad, wide.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.,* lieutenant, ambassador.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *m.,* read (*also* gather).

leō, leōnis, *m.,* lion.

Leōnidās, -ae, *m.,* Leonidas, *a Spartan king.*

lēx, lēgis, *f.,* law.

liber, librī, *m.,* book.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.,* free. [līberō.]

līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* (*of* **liber**), children.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set free, free. [līber.]

lībertās, -tātis, *f.,* freedom, liberty. [līber, līberō.]

lītus, lītoris, *n.,* shore.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca,** *n.*), place.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.,* long.

loquor, loquī, locūtus, talk, say.

lūdus, -ī, *m.,* sport, game.

lupus, -ī, *m.,* wolf.

M.

magis, *adv.,* more. [māgnus.]

magister, -trī, *m.,* master, teacher. [magis, māgnus.]

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.,* magistrate. [magis, māgnus, magister.]

māgnus, -a, -um, *adj.,* great, large. [magis.]

māior, -ōris, *adj., comp. of* **māgnus,** larger, greater; **māior nātū,** older.

mālō, mālle, māluī, *no perf. part.* wish rather, prefer. [magis, volō.]

malus, -a, -um, *adj.,* bad.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain.

manus, -ūs, *f.,* hand, band.

mare, maris, *n.,* sea.

marītus, -ī, *m.,* husband.

māter, mātris, *f.,* mother.

māximē, *adv.,* very much, exceedingly, most. [**māximus.**]

māximus, -a, -um *adj.* (*superl. of* **māgnus**), largest, greatest.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.,* middle.

melior, -ius, *adj.* (*comp. of* **bonus**), better.

memoria, -ae, *f.,* memory.

Menelāus, -ī, *m.,* Menelaus, *a Greek hero.*

mēnsa, -ae, *f.,* table.

mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month.

meus, -a, -um, *possessive pron.,* my, mine.

Micythus, -ī, *m.,* Micythus, *a Theban.*

miles, mīlitis, *m.,* soldier.

mīlle, *indecl. num. adj.,* thousand; *pl.,* **mīlia, -um,** *followed by gen.;* **mīlle passūs,** a mile.

Miltiadēs, -is, *m.,* Miltiades, *an Athenian general.*

minimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **parvus**), smallest, least.

minor, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* **parvus**), smaller; **minor nātū,** younger.

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.,* unhappy, wretched.

mītis, -e, *adj.,* mild, kind, gentle.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, -missus, send.

modus, -ī, *m.,* measure, manner.

mōns, montis, *m.,* mountain.

morior, morī, mortuus, die. [**mors.**]

mors, mortis, *f.,* death. [**morior.**]

mōs, mōris, *m.,* custom; *pl.,* habits, manners.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.

mox, *adv.,* presently.

mulier, -eris, *f.,* woman.

multitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* multitude, great number. [**multus.**]

multus, -a, -um, *adj.,* much; *pl.,* many. [**multitūdō.**]

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-:ī), -ītus, fortify.

mūrus, -ī, *m.,* wall.

N.

nam, *conj.,* for.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, narrate.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born.

nātū (*abl. sing. of a lost* **nātus, -ūs**), in age. [**nāscor.**]

nauta, -ae, *m.,* sailor. [**nāvis.**]

nāvis, -is, *f.,* ship. [**nauta.**]

-ne, *enclitic interrog. particle, simply denoting a question; in indirect questions sometimes* whether.

nē, *negative particle,* that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest, not to.

nec, *see* **neque.**

necēsse, *indecl. adj.,* necessary.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, kill.

nēmō, -inis, *m.,* nobody, no one. *Not used in gen. and abl., those cases of* **nūllus** *being used instead.*

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.,* grandson.

neque (nec), *conj.*, and not ; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.

niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.

nihil, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing.

nisi, *conj.*, if not. [**nē, sī.**]

nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, noble, of high birth.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, harm, injure.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, wish not. [**nē, volō.**]

nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name.

nōn, *adv.*, not. [**nē.**]

nōnne, *interr. adv. (introducing a question expecting the answer "yes"),* not? [**nōn, ne.**]

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, *adj. (only in pl.),* some, *i.e.* not none. [**nōn, nūllus.**]

nōs, *see* **ego.**

noster, -tra, -trum, *possess. pron.*, our. [**nōs.**]

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not any, no. [**nē, ūllus.**]

num, *interr. particle (expecting the answer "no") ; in indirect questions,* whether.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, Numa Pompilius, *king of Rome.*

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.

numquam, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, announce, report. [**nūntius.**]

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger. [**nūntiō.**]

O.

Ō, *interjection,* O, oh.

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, hold. [**teneō.**]

occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus, kill, slay,

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize.

ōdium, -ī, *n.*, hatred, hate.

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all.

onus, oneris, *n.*, burden, load. [**onustus.**]

onustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, burdened, laden. [**onus.**]

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack. [**pūgnō, pūgna.**]

optimus, -a, -um *(superl. of* **bonus),** best.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wish, desire.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, task.

orior, orīrī, ortus, rise, spring up, begin.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, show (stretch out before).

ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep.

P.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, pāritūrus, obey.

Paris, -idis, *m., son of Priam.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, procure, afford.

pars, partis, *f.*, part.

Parus, -ī, *f.*, Paros, *an island in the Aegean Sea.*

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs**, mile.

pastor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd.

pater, patris, *m.*, father. [**patria.**]

patior, patī, passus, suffer, allow.

patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land. [**pater.**]

Patroclus, -ī, *m.*, Patroclus, *a Greek hero.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, *used almost exclusively in the pl.*, few.

paulō, *adv.*, a little.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money.

pēior, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* **malus**), worse.

per, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), through.

pereō, -īre, periī (-īvī), peritūrus), perish, die.

perfidia, -ae, *f.*, perfidy, treachery. [**fidēs.**]

Periclēs, -is, *m.*, Pericles, *an Athenian statesman.*

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, risk.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, destruction. [**perniciōsus.**]

perniciōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, destructive, pernicious. [**perniciēs.**]

Persa, -ae, *m.*, Persian.

persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus, persuade, urge.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot, *as part of the body and also as a measure.*

pessimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **malus**), worst.

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī), petītus, seek, ask.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, please.

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, plebeians, common people.

poena, ae, *f.*, punishment.

poēta, ae, *m.*, poet.

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, Polyphemus, *a Cyclops.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *m.*, place, put.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people.

Porsenna, -ae, *m.*, Porsenna, *an Etruscan king.*

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door, entrance. [**portus.**]

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, port, harbor. [**porta.**]

possum, posse, potuī, be able, can. [**sum.**]

post, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), after.

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards. [**post, ea.**]

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, demand.

potēns, -entis, *adj.*, powerful. [*present part. of* **possum.**]

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power. [**possum, potēns.**]

potior, -īrī, -ītus, get possession of. [**possum.**]

praeda, -ae, *f.*, prey, booty.

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, stand before, excel. [**prae, stō.**]

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be over, command. [*be before,* **prae, sum.**]

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first. [**prior.**]

princeps, prīncipis, *m.*, chief.
[prīmus, capiō.]

prior, prius, *adj.*, former. [prī-
mus.]

probitās, -tātis, *f.*, honesty.

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, treason,
treachery. [prōdō.]

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give
up, betray. [dō, prōditiō.]

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profec-
tus, set out, go. [faciō.]

propior, -ius, *adj.*, nearer.

propter, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), on ac-
count of.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prō-
futūrus, be profitable, help.
[prō, sum.]

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.
of* propior), nearest.

prūdēns, -entis, *adj.*, prudent.
[prō, vidēns.]

prūdentia, -ae, *f.*, prudence,
foresight. [prūdēns.]

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, public;
rēs pūblica, (*public thing*),
state, republic. [populus.]

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl. [puer.]

puer, -ī, *m.*, boy. [puella.]

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*,
pretty, beautiful.

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.

Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Pyrrhus, *king
of Epirus.*

Q.

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, *adj.*,
fortieth. [quattuor.]

quadrāgintā, *indecl. numeral
adj.*, forty. [quattuor.]

quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor, *a
Roman official, often a gover-
nor.*

quam, *adv.*, than, as; *in ques-
tions,* how.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj. interrog.*,
how great? how much?; *rel.*,
as great, as; tantus . . .
quantus, so great . . . as.

quārē, on what account, why.
[quā, rē.]

quartus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fourth.
[quattuor.]

quattuor, *indecl. numeral,* four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who,
which, what; *indef.*, any.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,
indef. pron., a certain (*one,
etc.*). [quī.]

quīn, *conj.*, that, but that, that
not. [quī, nē.]

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *cardinal nu-
meral,* five hundred. [quīn-
que, centum.]

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. numeral,*
fifty. [quīnque.]

quīnque, *indecl. numeral,* five.

quīntus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fifth.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*,
who? which? what? [quī.]

quis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*,
used after sī, nisi, nē, *and*
num, any, any one, anything.
[quis, quī.]

quisquam, quidquam, *indef.
pron., used only after negatives
and negative expressions,* any
one, anything. [quis.]

quisque, quaeque, quidque, *indef. pron.*, each, every, every one. [quis.]

quod, *conj.*, because. [*originally n. acc. of* qui.]

quoque, *adv.*, also. [quī.]

quot, *indecl. pron.*, *interr.*, how many ? *rel.*, as many as. [quis, quī.]

R.

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, return, restore, give back. [dō.]

redeō, -īre, -iī, reditūrus, return, go back. [eō.]

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reign. [rēx, rēgnum.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom, reign. [rēx, rēgnō.]

regredior, regredī, regressus, return, go back.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion.

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus, leave.

Remus, -ī, *m.*, Remus, *brother of Romulus.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find out.

repetō, -ere, -petīvī (-iī), -petītus, demand *or* ask back.

rēs, reī, *f.*, thing ; rēs pūblica, (*public thing*), republic, state.

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, break down.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, reply, answer.

restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, set up again, restore.

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, retain, hold back. [teneō.]

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.

Rhodus, -ī, *f.*, Rhodes, *an island in the Aegean Sea.*

rideō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh, laugh at.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a river*).

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. [**Rōmānus, Rōmulus.**]

Rōmānus,-a,-um, *adj.*, Roman ; *m. as noun*, Roman. [**Rōma.**]

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus, *mythical founder of Rome.* [**Rōma.**]

S.

Sabīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sabine ; *m. as noun*, Sabine.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.

sapiēns, -entis, *adj.*, wise. [**sapientia.**]

sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom.

satis, *adv.*, enough.

schola, -ae, *f.*, school.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, second. [sequor.]

sed, *conj.*, but.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator, elder. [**senātus, senex.**]

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate. [**senātor, senex.**]

senex, senis, *m.*, old man ; *as adj.*, old ; *comp.*, senior, -ius, older. [**senātor, senātus.**]

septem, *indecl. numeral adj.*, seven. [**septimus.**]

septimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral,* seventh. [**septem.**]

sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow. [**secundus.**]

sermō, -ōnis, *m.,* talk.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep, preserve, save.

servus, -ī, *m.,* slave.

sex, *indecl. numeral adj.,* six. [**sextus.**]

sextus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.,* sixth. [**sex.**]

sī, *conj.,* if.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.,* Sicily.

sīgnum, -ī, *n.,* sign, signal, standard.

silva, ae, *f.,* forest, wood.

similis, -e, *adj.,* like, similar.

sīn, *conj.,* but if. [**sī, nē.**]

sine, *prep.* (*w. abl.*), without.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.,* left (*hand, etc.*).

socius, -ī, *m.,* ally.

sōl, sōlis, *m.,* sun.

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.,* alone.

somnus, -ī, *m.,* sleep.

soror, sorōris, *f.,* sister.

spēlunca, -ae, *f.,* cave.

spēs, speī, *f.,* hope.

statim, *adv.,* at once. [**stō.**]

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, *no perf. part.,* be eager. [**studium.**]

studium, -ī, *n.,* study, desire, zeal.

sub, *prep.* (*w. abl. and acc.*), under.

subvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, subvert, overthrow. [**vertō.**]

suī, sibī, sē, *reflexive pron., third person; no nom.,* himself, herself, itself, him, her, it. [**suus.**]

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.

super, *prep.*(*w. acc.*), over, above.

superbē, *adv.,* proudly. [**superbus.**]

superbia, -ae, *f.,* pride. [**superbus, superō, super.**]

superbus, -a, -um, *adj.,* proud. [**super, superō, superbia.**]

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, overcome, surpass. [**super.**]

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be over, remain. [**super, sum.**]

superus, -a, -um, *adj.,* high; *comp.* **superior, -ius,** higher, superior. [**super, superō.**]

suus, -a, -um, *possess. pron., third person,* his, her, its, their.

T.

tam, *adv.,* so.

tandem, *adv.,* at length.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus touch.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.,* so great. [**tam.**]

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.,* Tarquin, *the name of a family of kings at Rome.*

tempus, temporis, *n.,* time.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold.

terra, -ae, *f.,* earth.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.,* third. [**trēs.**]

Thēbae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Thebes, *a city of Greece.*

Themistoclēs, -is, *m.,* Themistocles, *an Athenian.*

Thermopylae, -ārum, *f.* *pl.*, Thermopylae, *the site of a battle in Greece.*

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, Tiber, *the river flowing by Rome.*

timeō, -ere, -uī, *no perf. part.*, fear.

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, give over, give up. [**dō.**]

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead across, transfer. [**dūcō.**]

trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, cross, cross over, go across. [**eō.**]

trecentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, three hundred. [**trēs, centum.**]

trēs, tria, *numeral adj.*, three.

trīgintā, *indecl. numeral adj.*, thirty. [**trēs.**]

Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, *a city captured by Greek heroes.*

Trōiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Trojan ; *m. as noun*, Trojan. [**Trōia.**]

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, *personal pron.*, *second person*, thou, you ; *pl.*, **vōs,** you. [**tuus.**]

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, Tullus Hostilius, *a king of Rome.*

tum, *adv.*, then.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower, turret (*acc.* **turrim**).

tuus, -a, -um, *possessive pron.*, *second person*, thy, your. [**tū.**]

U.

ubī, *adv.*, *interr. and rel.*, where.

Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ulysses, *a Greek hero.*

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, last.

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade.

unde, *adv.*, *interr. and rel.*, whence, from where.

ūnus, -a, -um, *numeral adj.*, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ut, *conj. w. subj.*, that, in order that, so that.

ūtilis, -e, *adj.*, useful. [**ūtor.**]

utinam, *conj.*, O that, would that.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, use, employ.

ūva, -ae, *f.*, cluster of grapes, grapes.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

V.

valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, have influence. [**validus.**]

validus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, sturdy. [**valeō.**]

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, come.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

vereor, -ērī, veritus, fear.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road.

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.*, twentieth. [**vīgintī.**]

victor, -ōris, *m.*, victor, conqueror. [**vincō.**]

victōria, ae, *f.*, victory. [**vincō, victor.**]

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see ; *in pass.*, *sometimes* seem.

vīgintī, *indecl. numeral adj.*, twenty. [**vīcēsimus.**]

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

ability, ingenium, -ī, *n.*

able (be), possum, posse, potuī.

about, dē (*w. abl.*).

absent (be), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

accept, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

account (on — of), propter (*w. acc.*) ; causā (*w. gen.*); **on what account**, quārē.

accuse, accūsō, 1.

Achilles, Achillēs, -is, *m.*

across (lead), trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

act, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus ; **kind act**, beneficium, -ī, *n.*

admire, admīror, 1, *dep.*

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*

afford, parō, 1.

after, post (*w. acc.*).

afterwards, posteā.

again (set up), restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus.

against, in (*w. acc.*) ; contrā (*w. acc.*).

Agamemnon, Agamemnōn, -onis, *m.*

age (in), nātū.

Alba, Alba, -ae, *f.*

Alban, Albānus, -a, -um.

all, omnis, -e.

allow, patior, patī, passus.

ally, socius, -ī, *m.*

alone, sōlus, -a, um, (*gen.* sōlīus, *dat.* sōlī).

already, iam.

also, quoque, etiam.

although, cum.

always, semper.

am, *see* be.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

among, apud (*w. acc.*) ; inter (*w. acc.*).

Ancus, Ancus, -ī, *m.*

and, et, -que, atque (āc) ; **and not**, neque.

animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*

announce, nūntiō, 1.

any (not), nūllus, -a, -um.

appear, appăreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.

approach, appropinquō, 1.

arise, orior, orīrī, ortus.

arm, armō, 1.

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, quam.

Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*

ask, petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus ; pōstulō, 1 ; interrogō, 1.

ass, asinus, -ī, m.

assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus.

assist, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus ; adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.

assistance, auxilium, -ī, *n.*

associate, socius, -ī, *m.*

at, in (*w. abl.*), apud, ad (*w. acc.*) ; **at length,** tandem, *adv.* ; **at once,** statim, *adv.*

Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -is, *m.*

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.* ; oppūgnō, 1.

attain, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus.

author, auctor, -ōris, *m.*

authority, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*

away (be), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus ; **lead away,** abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus ; **carry away,** dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus ; **go away,** exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus ; **turn away,** āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.

B.

back (demand), repetō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus ; **give back,** reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus ; **go back,** redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

bad, malus, -a, -um.

band, manus, -ūs, *f.*

bank (*of a river*), rīpa, -ae, *f.*

battering ram, ariēs, arietis, *m.*

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus ; **be absent, away** *or* **distant,** absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus ; **be able,** possum, posse, potuī ; **be born,** nāscor, nāscī, nātus ; **be clear,** appāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī, -itūrus ; **be done** *or* **made,** fīō, fierī, factus ; **be eager,** studeō, -ēre, -uī ; **be over,** praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus ; **be pleasing,** placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus ; **be present,** adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus ; **be profitable,** prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus ; **be strong,** valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus ; **be unwilling,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī ; **be willing,** volō, velle, voluī.

beast, bestia, -ae, *f.*

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod.

become, fīō, fierī, factus.

before, ante (*w. acc.*).

behind, post (*w. acc.*).

betray, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.

between, inter (*w. acc.*).

birth (of high), nōbilis, -e.

black, niger, -gra, -grum.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
born (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus.
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravery, fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāc-
tus ; **break down,** rescindō,
-ere, rescidī, rescissus.
bribe, corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī,
-ruptus.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ;
bring out, efferō, efferre, ex-
tulī, ēlātus ; **bring to,** īnferō,
īnferre, intulī, illātus ; **bring
together,** cōnferō, cōnferre,
contulī, collātus ; **bring up,**
ēducō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, oneris, *n.*
burdened, onustus, -a, -um.
burn, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēn-
sus.
burning, incendium, -ī, *n.*
but, sed, autem ; **but that,** quīn ;
but if, sīn.
by, ā, ab (*w. abl.*).

C.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
calamity, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
call, vocō, 1 ; appellō, 1 ; **call
together,** convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

can, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, cap-
tus.
carry, portō, 1 ; ferō, ferre, tulī,
lātus ; **carry on,** gerō, -ere,
gessī, gestus ; **carry out,**
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus ;
carry to, īnferō, -ferre, intulī,
illātus ; **carry together,** cōn-
ferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus.
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
cast, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cave, spēlunca, -ae, *f.*
celebrated, celeber, -bris, -bre.
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam,
quoddam.
check, comprimō, -ere, -pressī,
-pressum.
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, creō, 1.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clear (be), appāreō, -pārēre, -pā-
ruī, -pāritūrus.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clau-
sus.
cluster of grapes, ūva, -ae, *f.*
collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāc-
tus.
combat, certāmen, -minis, *n.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus ;
come together, conveniō, -īre,
-vēnī, -ventūrus.
command, iubeō, -ēre, iūssī,
iūssus.

commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

companion, comes, -itis, *m.*

compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāc-
tus.

comprehend, intellegō, -ere,
intellēxī, intellēctus.

conceal, cēlō, 1.

concerning, dē (*w. abl.*).

condemn, damnō, 1.

condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, vic-
tus.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, *m.*

conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*

conspire, coniūrō, 1.

consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*

Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*

corrupt, corrumpō, -ere, corrūpī,
corruptus.

counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

courage, fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

create, creō, 1.

crime, crīmen, -minis, *n.*

cross, cross over, trānseō, -īre,
-iī (-īvī), -itus.

crush, comprimō, -ere, -pressī,
-pressus.

cunning, dolus, -ī, *m.*

custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*

Cyclops, Cyclōps, -ōpis, *m.*

D.

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

Darius, Dārēus, -ī, *m.*

daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*

day, diēs, diēī, *m.* ; **every day,**
cottīdiē, *adv.*

dead, mortuus, -a, -um.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

death, mors, mortis, *f.*

deceit, dolus, -ī, *m.*

decide, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī,
dēcrētus ; cōnstituō, -ere, -sti-
tuī, -stitūtus.

declare, indicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dic-
tus.

decree, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī,
dēcrētus.

deed, facinus, facinoris, *n.*

deep, altus, -a, -um.

defeat, clādēs, -is, *f* ; superō, 1.

defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī,
dēfēnsus.

delight, dēlectō, 1.

demand, pōstulō, 1 ; **demand
back**, repetō, -ere, -īvī (-iī),
-ītus.

depart, concēdō, -ere, -cēssī,
-cēssūrus.

desire, optō, 1 ; cupiō, -ere, -īvī,
-ītus ; studium, -ī, *n.*

destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

destruction, perniciēs, -eī, *f.*

destructive, perniciōsus, -a, -um.

die, morior, morī, mortuus.

difficult, difficilis, -e.

diligence, industria, -ae, *f.*

direct, dīrigō, -ere, dīrēxī, dīrēc-
tus.

disagreement, discordia, -ae, *f.*

disaster, clādēs, -is, *f.*

distant (be), absum, abesse,
āfuī, āfutūrus.

divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvī-
sus.

do, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus ; gerō,
-ere, gessī, gestus ; faciō, -ere,
fēcī, factus.

dog, canis, -is, c.
doubt, dubitō, 1.
dove, columba, -ae, f.
down (break), rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissus.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.

E.

eager (be), studeō, -ēre, -uī.
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
educate, ēducō, 1.
either, aut.
elect, creō, 1.
emperor, imperātor, -ōris, m.
empire, imperium -ī, n.
end, fīnis, -is, m.
enemy, hostis, -is, m. ; inimīcus, -ī, m.
enjoy, fruor, fruī, fruitus and frūctus.
enlarge, ampliō, 1 ; augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus.
enough, satis.
enter, ingredior, ingredī, ingressus.
Epaminondas, Epamīnōndās, -ae, m.
equal, aequus, -a, -um.
equip, armō, 1.
equity, aequitās, -tātis, f.
establish, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus.
even, etiam.
every, quisque, quaeque, quidque ; every day, cottīdiē, adv.
exceedingly, māximē.
excel, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus.

excellence, virtūs, -tūtis, f.
exile, exsilium, -ī, n.
expect, exspectō, 1.

F.

Fabricius, Fābricius, -ī, m.
face, vultus, -ūs, m.
fair, aequus, -a, -um.
fairness, aequitās, -tātis, f.
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fame, glōria, -ae, f.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
favor, beneficium, -ī, n.
fear, timor, -ōris, m. ; timeō, -ēre, -uī ; vereor, -ērī, veritus.
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, f.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fierce, ferōx, -ōcis.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pūgnō, 1.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus ; find out, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
fire, ignis, -is, m. ; incendium, -ī, n.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque.
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flight (put to), fugō, 1.
flock, grex, gregis, m.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
food, cibus, -ī, m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.

for, *prep.*, ad (*w. acc.*) ; *conj.*, enim (*post-positive*), nam.

force, vīs, vīs, *f.* ; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus ; **forces (of men** *in war*), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

foresight, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*

forest, silva, -ae, *f.*

forgive, īgnōscō, -ere, īgnōvī, īgnōtūrus.

former, prior, prius.

formerly, ōlim.

fortieth, quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um.

fortify, mūniō, 4.

fortune, good fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

forum, forum, -ī, *n.*

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.

fraud, fraus, fraudis, *f.*

free, līber, -era, -erum ; **set free**, līberō, 1.

friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*

friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*

frighten, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus.

from, ā, ab (*w. abl.*) ; **turn from**, āvertō, ere, -tī, -sus.

G.

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*

garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*

gate, porta, -ae, *f.*

gather, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.* (*the country*) ; Gallus, -ī, *m.* (*the inhabitant*).

general, dux, ducis, *m.*

gentle, mītis, -e.

get possession of, potior, potīrī, potītus.

giant, gigās, gigantis, *m.*

gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*

girl, puella, -ae, *f.*

give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus ; **give up**, trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus ; prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus.

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*

go, eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, itūrus ; proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus ; sē cōnferre (cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus) ; concēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssūrus ; **go back**, redeō, -ēre, -iī, -itūrus ; **go into**, ingredior, ingredī, ingressus ; **go out** *or* **away**, exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus.

god, deus, deī, *m.*

gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*

good, bonus, -a, -um.

good fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

good will, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*

grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*

grandson, nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*

grapes, ūva, -ae, *f.*

grateful, grātus, -a, -um.

great, māgnus, -a, -um ; **how great**, quantus, -a, -um ; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um ; **great number**, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.

guard, cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.* ; cūstōdiō, 4.

guest, hospes, -itis, *m.*

H.

habits, mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard, dūrus, -a, -um ; difficilis, -e.
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
harmony, concordia, -ae, *f.*
hasten, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
hatred, ōdium, -ī, *n.*
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus :
    have influence, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō, 4.
heavy, gravis, -e.
Hector, Hector, -oris, *m.*
Helen, Helena, -ae, *f.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus ; prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.
hen, gallīna, -ae, *f.*
her, *the proper case of* is, ea, id ; *as possessive*, suus, -a, -um.
herself, suī, sibi, sē, sē (*cf.* ipse).
high, altus, -a, -um ; superus, -a, -um ; *of high birth*, nōbilis, -e.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
him, *the proper case of* is, ea, id.
himself, suī, sibi, sē (*cf.* ipse).
his, suus, -a, -um ; ēius.
hold, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus ; teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus ; obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus ; **hold back**, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
honesty, probitās, -tātis, *f.*

hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
Horace, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, quantus, -a, -um ;
    how many, quot, *indecl.*
however, autem.
huge, ingēns, ingentis.
hundred, centum.
hundredth, centēsimus, -a, -um.
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
husband, marītus, -ī, *m.*

I.

I, egō, meī, mihi, mē, mē.
if, sī ; **if not**, nisi ; **but if**, sīn.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
immediately, statim.
impede, impediō, 4.
in, in (*w. abl.*).
increase, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus.
induce, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
industry, industria, -ae, *f.*
inferior, īnferior, -ius.
inflict, īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.
influence, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* ;
    have influence, valeō, -ēre, -uī, valitūrus.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
injury (*implying a wrong*), iniūria, -ae, *f.*
into, in (*w. acc.*) ; **go into**, ingredior, ingredī, ingressus.

island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, is, ea, id.
Italy, Ĭtalia, -ae, *f.*
its, suus, sua, suum, *reflexive;* ēius, *not reflexive.*
itself, suī, sibi, sē, sē.

J.

Janiculum, Iāniculum, -ī, *n.*
jolly, laetus, -a, -um.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*

K.

keep, servō, 1.
kid, haedus, -ī, *m.*
kill, necō, 1 ; occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus ; interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
kind act, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus.

L.

labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Lacedaemon, Lacedaemōn, -monis, *f.*
Lacedaemonian, Lacedaemonius, -ī, *m.*
laden, onustus, -a, -um.
land, terra, -ae, *f.* ; **native land,** patria, -ae, *f.*
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, ultimus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
laugh, rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus ; **lead away,** abdūcō ; **lead across,** trādūcō ; **lead in** *or* **into,** indūcō (*all conjugated like* dūcō).
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leave, relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.
left, sinister, -tra, -trum.
length (at), tandem.
Leonidas, Leōnidās, -ae, *m.*
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
like, similis, -e.
lion, leō, -ōnis, *m.*
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, 1.
load, onus, -eris, *n.*
long, longus, -a, -um ; **long, a long time,** diū, *adv.*
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
loss, clādēs, -is, *f.*
loud, māgnus, -a, -um.
love, amō, 1.
low, īnferus, -a, -um.
Lucy, Lūcia, -ae, *f.*

M.

made (be), fīō, fierī, factus.
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
maiden, virgō, virginis, *f.*
maid-servant, ancilla, -ae, *f.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m.* (*a grown man*) ; homō, hominis, *m.* (*a human being*) ; **young man,** iuvenis, -is. *m.* ; **old man,** senex, senis, *m.*

manner, modus, -ī, *m.* ; **manners**, mōrēs, mōrum, *m.*

many, multī, -ae, -a; **how many**, quot, *indecl.*

march, iter, itineris, *n.*

master (of a slave), dominus, -ī, *m.* ; **master (of a pupil)**, magister, -trī, *m.*

measure, modus, -ī, *m.*

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

Menelaus, Menelāus, -ī, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

Micythus, Micythus, -ī, *m.*

middle, medius, -a, -um.

midnight, media nox, noctis, *f.*

mild, mitis, -e.

mile, mille passūs : *pl.* mīlia passuum.

Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, *m.*

mind, animus, -ī, *m.*

mine, meus, -a, -um.

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*

more, magis ; plūs, plūris.

most, māximē.

mother, māter, -tris, *f.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

much, multus, -a, -um ; **very much**, māximē, *adv.*

my, meus, -a, -um.

N.

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*

narrow, angustus, -a, -um.

native land, patria, -ae, *f.*

nature, ingenium, -ī, *n.*

near, ad (*w. acc.*) ; apud (*w. acc.*).

nearer, propior, -ius.

necessary, necēsse, *indecl.*

neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.

neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

neither, neque (nec).

never, numquam.

new, novus, -a, -um.

next, deinde ; proximus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

no, nūllus, -a, -um.

noble, nōbilis, -e.

nobody (no one), nēmō, -inis, *m.* (*not used in gen. and abl.*, nūllīus *and* nūllō *being used instead*).

nor, neque (nec).

not, nōn, *in questions*, nōnne ; **and not**, neque (nec) ; **not any**, nūllus, -a, -um ; **if not**, nisi ; **that not**, *etc.*, nē.

nothing, nihil.

now, nunc.

Numa, Numa, -ae, *m.*

number, numerus, -ī, *m.* ; **great number**, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

O.

O, ō ; **o that**, utinam.

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.

obtain, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus.

of (out of), ē, ex (*w. abl.*) ; **on account of**, propter (*w. acc.*) ; causā (*w. gen.*) ; **for the sake of**, causā (*w. gen.*).

often, saepe.

oh, ō.

old, old man, senex, senis.

older, māior nātū, māiōris nātū ; senior, -ōris.

on, in (*w. acc. and abl.*); **on account of**, propter (*w. acc.*) ; causā (*w. gen.*).

once on a time, ōlim, *adv.*

one, ūnus, -a, -um (*gen.* ūnīus, *dat.* ūnī).

only, sōlus, -a, -um.

other, cēterus, -a, -um (*not used in nom. sing. m.*), alius, -a, -ud ; **other (of two),** alter, -era, -erum.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum.

out (bring or carry), efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus ; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus ; **set out,** proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus.

out of, ē, ex (*w. abl.*).

over, super (*w. acc.*); **be over,** praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus ; supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus ; **cross over,** trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.

overcome, superō, 1.

overthrow, subvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.

P.

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*

pardon, ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtūrus.

Paris, Paris, -idis, *m.*

Paros, Parus, -ī, *f.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

Patroclus, Patroclus, -ī, *m.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*, **common people,** plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

perfidy, perfidia, -ae, *f.*

Pericles, Periclēs, -is, *m.*

perish, pereō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itūrus.

pernicious, perniciōsus, -a, -um.

Persian, Persa, -ae, *m.*

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus.

place, locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*) ; collocō, 1 ; pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.

please, dēlectō, 1 ; placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.

pleasing (be), placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.

pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.*

plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*

Porsenna, Porsenna, -ae, *m.*

possession (get — of), potior, potīrī, potītus.

power, potestās, -tātis, *f.* ; imperium, -ī, *n.* ; **royal power,** rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, potentis.

praise, laudō, 1.

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.

prepare, parō, 1.

present (be), adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.

presently, mox.

preserve, servō, 1 ; cōnservō, 1.

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

prey, praeda, -ae, *f.*

pride, superbia, -ae, *f.*

prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

procure, parō, 1.

profitable (be), prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.

proud, superbus, -a, -um.

proudly, superbē.

prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdēns, prūdentis.
punish, pūniō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus ;
  put to flight, fugō, 1.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*

Q.

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*
question, interrogō, 1.

R.

race, gēns, gentis, *f.* ; genus,
  generis, *n.* ; cursus, -ūs, *m.*
ram, ariēs, arietis, *m.*
rather (wish), mālō, mālle,
  māluī.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī,
  -ceptus.
reign, rēgnum, -i, *n.* ; rēgnō, 1.
religion, religiō, -ōnis, *f.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī,
  mānsūrus ; supersum, -esse,
  -fuī, -futūrus.
remarkable, īnsīgnis, -e.
Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*
reply, respondeō, -ēre, respondī,
  respōnsūrus.
report, nūntiō, 1 ; dēferō, -ferre,
  -tulī, -lātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pū-
  blicae, *f.*
rest of, cēterus, -a, -um.
restore, restituō, -ere, -stituī,
  -stitūtus.
retain, retineō, -ēre, -tinuī,
  -tentus.
return, reddō, reddere, reddidī,

redditus ;   redeō,   -īre,   -iī,
  -itūrus ;   regredior,   regredī,
  regressus.
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhodes, Rhodus, -ī, *f.*
right, dexter, -tra, -trum.
rise, orior, orīrī, ortus.
risk, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
river, fluvius, -ī, *m.* ; flūmen,
  -minis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um (*m.*
  as noun).
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursū-
  rus.

S.

Sabine, Sabīnus, -a, -um, (*m. as*
  noun).
sake (for — of), causā (*w. gen.*).
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, 1 ; cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
school, schola, -ae, *f.*
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus.
seize, occupō, 1.
self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive ;*
  suī, sibi, sē, sē, *reflexive.*
senate, senatus, -ūs, *m.*
senate-house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
serious, gravis, -e.
seriously, graviter.
servant (maid), ancilla, -ae, *f.*

282   A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN.

set, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitū-
tus ; set on fire, incendō, -ere,
incendī, incēnsus ; set free,
līberō, 1 ; set out, proficiscor,
proficiscī, profectus ; set up
again, restituō, -ere, -stituī,
-stitūtus.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
shade, umbra, -ae, f.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter.
sheep, ovis, -is, f.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
shore, lītus, lītoris, n.
short, brevis, -e.
show, ostendō, -ere, ostendī,
ostentus.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
sign, signum, -ī, n.
signal, signum, -ī, n.
similar, similis, -e.
since, cum (w. subj.).
sister, soror, sorōris, f.
six, sex.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
slay, necō, 1 ; occīdō, -ere, òc-
cīdī, occīsus ; interficiō, -ficere,
-fēcī, -fectus.
sleep, somnus, -ī, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, ita ; so great, tantus,
-a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, m.
some, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a ; aliquis,
-qua, -quid (and aliquī, -qua,
-quod); quisquam, quidquam ;
quis, qua, quid.
somebody, aliquis ; quisquam ;
quis.

son, fīlius, -ī, m.
sort, genus, generis, n.
Sparta, Lacedaemōn, -onis, f.
spirit, animus, -ī, m.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.
standard, signum, -ī, n.
state, cīvitās, -tātis, f. ; rēs pū-
blica, reī pūblicae, f.
station, collocō, 1.
stone, lapis, lapidis, m.
storm, take by storm, expū-
gnō, 1.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
strength, vīs, vīs, f.
strife, certāmen, -minis, n.
strive, contendō, -ere, contendī,
contentus.
strong, validus, -a, -um ; be
strong, valeō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus.
struggle, certāmen, -minis, n.
study, studium, -ī, n.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
subvert, subvertō, -ere, -vertī,
-versus.
suffer, patior, patī, passus.
suggest, iniciō, -ere, iniēcī, in-
iectus.
sum (large — of), multus, -a,
-um.
superior, superior, -ius.
surpass, superō, 1.
surround, circumdō, -dare, -dedī,
-datus.
swift, vēlōx, vēlōcis.
sword, gladius, -ī, m.

T.

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus ;
take by storm, expūgnō, 1.

talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus ;
  sermō, -ōnis, *m.*
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*
task, opus, operis, *n.*
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1 ; dīcō, -ere, dīxī,
  dictus.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam.
that, is, ea, id ; ille, illa, illud ;
  that (of yours), iste, ista,
  istud ; **that, so that, in order
  that**, ut ; **that not, in order
  that not**, nē ; **that, but that**,
  quīn ; **O that, would that**,
  utinam.
Thebes, Thēbae, -ārum, *f.*
their, suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*) ;
  eōrum, eārum (*gen. pl. of* is,
  not reflexive).
themselves, suī, sibi, sē.
then, deinde, tum.
thence, inde.
there, ibi ; **from there**, inde.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, 1 ; exīstimō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thou, tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē.
thousand, mīlle, *pl.* mīlia.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per (*w. acc.*).
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus ;
  throw upon *or* **into**, iniciō,
  -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.

thus, ita.
thy, tuus, -a, -um.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.* ; **once
  upon a time**, ōlim.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, ad (*w. acc*) ; in (*w. acc.*).
to-day, hodiē.
together, con- *in composition,
  as:* **call together**, convocō,
  1 ; **come together**, conveniō,
  -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus ; **bring
  or carry together**, cōnferō,
  -ferre, contulī, conlātus.
toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*
touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāc-
  tus.
tower, turris, -is, *f., acc.* tur-
  rim.
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
transfer, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī,
  -ductus.
treachery, perfidia, -ae, *f.* ; prō-
  ditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
Trojan, Trōiānus, -a, -um ; *m. as
  noun.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
Troy, Trōia, -ae, *f.*
try, cōnor, 1, *dep.*
Tullus, Tullus, -ī, *m.*
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versus ;
  turn from *or* **away**, āvertō,
  -ere, -vertī, -versus.
turret, turris, -is, *f.*
twentieth, vīcēsimus, -a, -um.
twenty, vīgintī, *indecl.*
two, duō, -ae, -ō.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U.

under, sub (*w. acc. and abl.*).
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
up (bring), ēducō, 1; **give up**, prōdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
urge on, incitō, 1.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus.
useful, ūtilis, -e.

V.

vain (in), frustrā.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
vast, ingēns, ingentis.
very, *expressed by the superlative.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
virgin, virgō, virginis, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W.

wage war, bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
wait for, exspectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warlike, ferōx, -ōcis.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*
we, nōs, nostrum.
weak, dēbilis, -e.
well, bene.
what, quis, quae, quid; **on what account**, quārē.

when, cum.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
which, quis, quae, quid, *interr.*; quī, quae, quod, *rel.*
who, quis, quae, quid, *interr.*; quī, quae, quod, *rel.*
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (*gen.* tōtīus, *dat.* tōtī).
why, cūr; quārē.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wild beast, bestia, -ae, *f.*
will, good will, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wish, optō, 1; volō, velle, voluī; **wish not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī; **wish rather**, mālō, mālle, māluī.
with, cum (*w. abl.*); apud (*w. acc.*).
withdraw, discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssūrus.
without, sine (*w. abl.*).
wolf, lupus, -ī, *m.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, opus, operis, *n.*
would that, utinam.
wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*; vulnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

X.

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, *m.*

Y.

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī.

you, tū, tuī, *pl.* vōs, vestrum.
young, iuvenis, -e ; **younger,**
    minor nātū, minōris nātū,
    iūnior, -ōris.
young man, iuvenis, -is, *m.*
your, yours, tuus, -a, -um ; ves-
    ter, -tra, -trum.
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

INDEX.

[References are to sections.]

The following volumes are now ready or in preparation: —

CAESAR, Gallic War, Books I–V. By HAROLD W. JOHNSTON, Ph.D., Professor in the Indiana University.

CATULLUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.

CICERO, Select Orations. By B. L. D'OOGE, A.M., Professor in the State Normal School, Ypsilanti, Mich.

CICERO, De Senectute et de Amicitia. By CHARLES E. BENNETT, A.M., Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*

CICERO, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II. By Professor PECK.

CICERO, De Oratore, Book I, based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College. *nearly.*

CICERO, Select Letters, based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.

EUTROPIUS, Selections. *Ready.*

GELLIUS, Selections. By Professor PECK.

HORACE, Odes and Epodes. By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Ready.*

HORACE, Satires and Epistles, based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*

JUVENAL, Satires. By JAMES C. EGBERT, Jr., Ph.D., Adjunct Professor of Latin, and NELSON G. McCREA, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin, Columbia University.

LIVY, Books XXI and XXII, based upon the edition of Wölfflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*

LIVY, Book I, for rapid reading. By Professor LORD. *Ready.*

LUCRETIUS, De Rerum Natura, Book III. By W. A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California.

MARTIAL, Selections. By CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D., Professor in Barnard College.

NEPOS, for rapid reading. By ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California. *Ready.*

NEPOS, Selections. By J. C. JONES, A.M., Professor in the University of Missouri.

OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses, based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By B. L. Wiggins, A.M., Professor in the University of the South.

OVID, Selections, for rapid reading. By A. L. Bondurant, A.M., Professor in the University of Mississippi.

PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis, based upon the edition of Bücheler. By W. E. Waters, Ph.D., President of Wells College.

PLAUTUS, Captivi, for rapid reading. By Grove E. Barber, A.M., Professor in the University of Nebraska.   *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Menaechmi, based upon the edition of Brix. By Harold N. Fowler, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University.   *Ready.*

PLINY, Select Letters, for rapid reading. By Samuel Ball Platner, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*

QUINTILIAN, Book X and Selections from Book XII, based upon the edition of Krüger.

SALLUST, Catiline, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By Charles G. Herbermann, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York.   *Ready.*

SENECA, Select Letters. By E. C. Winslow, A.M.

TACITUS, Annals, Book I and Selections from Book II, based upon the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen. By E. M. Hyde, Ph.D., Professor in Lehigh University.

TACITUS, Agricola and Germania, based upon the editions of Schweizer-Sidler and Dräger. By A. G. Hopkins, Ph.D., Professor in Hamilton College.   *Ready.*

TACITUS, Histories, Book I and Selections from Books II-V, based upon the edition of Wolff. By Edward H. Spieker, Ph.D., Professor in the Johns Hopkins University.

TERENCE, Adelphoe, for rapid reading. By William L. Cowles, A.M., Professor in Amherst College.   *Ready.*

TERENCE, Phormio, based upon the edition of Dziatzko. By Herbert C. Elmer, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell University.   *Ready.*

TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Jacoby. By Henry F. Burton, A.M., Professor in the University of Rochester.